## General Disclaimer One or more of the Following Statements may affect this Document

- This document has been reproduced from the best copy furnished by the organizational source. It is being released in the interest of making available as much information as possible.
- This document may contain data, which exceeds the sheet parameters. It was furnished in this condition by the organizational source and is the best copy available.
- This document may contain tone-on-tone or color graphs, charts and/or pictures, which have been reproduced in black and white.
- This document is paginated as submitted by the original source.
- Portions of this document are not fully legible due to the historical nature of some of the material. However, it is the best reproduction available from the original submission.

Produced by the NASA Center for Aerospace Information (CASI)

THE PRESENT SITUPTION AND FORECASTS OF SEMICONDUCTOR ELEMENTS PERFORMANCE WITHIN THE MICROWAVE RANGE, 1970-1985

Bertil Peterson
(NASA-TM-75453) THE PRESENT SITUATION AND N78-33338 FORECASTS OF SEMICONDUCTOR ELEMENTS PERFORMANCE WITGIN THE MICROWAVE RANGE, 1970-1985 (National Aeronautics and Space Jnclas Administration) 229 p HC A11/MF A01 G3/33 33660

Translation of "Nulaege och prognos foer FT elements prestanda inom mikrovagsomradet 1970-1985," Research Institute of National Defence, Stockholm, Sweden, Sept. 1971, 224 pages


| 1. Repert No . <br> NASA TM-75453 | 2. Government Accession No. | 3. Recipient's Cotaleg No . |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 4. Title and Subtitie <br> THE PRESENT SITUATION AND FORECASTS OF SEMICONDUCTOR ELEMENTS PERFORMANCE WITH IN THE MICROWAVE RANGE, 1970-1987 |  | 5. Repart Date ${ }^{\text {October, }} 1978$ |
|  |  | 6. Parlarming Organisation Code |
| 7. Authar(s) <br> Bertil Peterson <br> Research Institute of National Defense |  | 8. Perlorming Organisation Repatt No. |
|  |  | 10. Werlt Unit Ne. |
|  |  |  |
| Leo Kanner Associates Redwood City, California 94063 |  | 13. Type ol Rapart and Paried Cavered |
| 12. Spontaring Agancy Name and Addrest National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington, D.C. 20546 |  |  |
|  |  | 14. Spanariag Ageney Code |
| 15. Supplomentary Notes <br> Translation of "Nulaege och prognos foer FT elements prestanda inom mikrovagsomradet 1970-1985," Research Institute of National Defence, Stockholm, Sweden, Sept. 1971, 224 pages ( $\mathrm{N}^{2} 4-13483$ ) |  |  |
| 16. Abstraet <br> The present situation and possible developments over the period 1970-1985 for active semiconductor elements in the microwave range are outlined. After a short historical survey of $F T$ techniques, the following are discussed: Generation, power amplification, amplification of small signals, frequency conversion, detection, electronic signal control and integrated microwave circuits. |  |  |
|  |  |  |
| 19. Security Classif. (af this roport) Unclassified | 20. Security Classif. (of this page) Unclassified | 21. No. of Pages ${ }^{\text {22, Price }}$ |

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction ..... 1
Shor: Summary of the Development of Active Semiconductor Devices in the Microwave Range ..... 1
Generation and Power Amplification ..... 6
The High Frequency Transistor ..... 6
The Development of the Power Transistor ..... 10
Pulse Operation in the Transistor ..... 12
A New Type of Transistor ..... 14
The Frequency Multiplier ..... 16
The Use of Multiple Varactors ..... 22
Bandwidth of the Frequency :Aultiplier ..... 23
Noise Characteristics of Frequency Multipliers ..... 23
The Avalanche Diode Oscillator ..... 26
Power-Frequency Limits in Avalanche Diodes ..... 27
Noise in the Avalanche Diode Oscillator ..... 35
Electronic Tuning of the Avalanche Oscillator ..... 36
Power Amplification with the Avalanche Diode ..... 36
The Gunn Oscillator ..... 40
Power Limits of the Gunn Diode ..... 42
Efficiency and Forecast of Power Output in the Gunn Diode ..... 50
Noise Properties in the Gunn Diode Oscillator ..... 51
Electric Tuning of the Gunn Diode Oscillator ..... 53
Frequency Locking in the Gunn Diode Oscillator ..... 53
Life Span of the Gunn Diode Oscillator ..... 54
Future Variants of the Gunn Oscillator ..... 54TABLE OF CONTENTS (Con't)
Power Amplification with the Gunn Diode ..... 55
The Electroacoustic Amplifier ..... 59
Other Semiconductor Oscillators ..... 67
The Tunnel Diode Oscillator ..... 67
The Josepizon Oscillator ..... 74
Microwave Generation with Indium Antimonide ..... 77
Comprehensive Forecast for Power Generating Solid-State Devices ..... 78
Small Signal Amplification ..... 81
The Low Noise Transistor ..... 81
Parametric Amplifiers ..... 85
Future Development of the Parametric Amplifier ..... 92
The Tunnel Diode Amplifier ..... 97
Bandwidth ..... 101
Noise factor ..... 102
The Maser Amplifier ..... 104
Future Development of the Maser ..... 106
Other Low Noise Solid-State Amplifiers ..... 108
A Summarizing Forecast for Low Noise Amplifiers ..... 108
Frequency Conversion ..... 111
Up-Converters for the Upper Sideband ..... 111
The Mixer Diode ..... 118
Estimating the Lowest Possible Noise Factor for a Mixer ..... 122
The Broadband Case ..... 122
The Image Frequency Sees an Open Circuit ..... 122
Maximum Power Level for a Mixer Diode ..... 126
TABLE OF CONTENTS (Con't)
The Saturation Level ..... 126
The Mixer Diode's Power Durability ..... 127
Broadband Mixers ..... 128
The Tunnel Diode Mixer ..... 129
The Josephson Junction as a Local Oscillator and Mixer ..... 130
Detection ..... 134
The Detector Diode ..... 134
The Detector's Quadratic Range ..... 141
Less Common Types of Detectors ..... 143
The Josephson Detector ..... 143
The Thermoelectric Detector ..... 145
The Dielectric Detector ..... 145
Combinations of Pre-Amplifiers and Detectors ..... 145
Electronic Switching ..... 149
The Breaker Diode ..... 149
General Information on the High-Frequency Breaker ..... 149
High-Frequency Breakers with PIN diodes ..... 151
General Characteristics ..... 151
Power Durability ..... 153
Attenuators with PIN diodes ..... 162
Phase Shifters with PIN diodes ..... 163
The Phase Shifter's Power Durability ..... 166
PIN diode Limiters ..... 171
Other Signal Manipulation ..... 178

## TABLE OF CONTENTS (Con' $\iota$ )

Integrated Microwave Circuits ..... 182
The Integration of Circuits and Active Semiconduc- toz Devices ..... 182
Maximum Frequency for Microstrip Lines and Concentrated Impedance Devices ..... 187
The Power Durability of Microstrip Lines ..... 189
Some General Views on the Future Prospects for Integrated Circuits ..... 189

# THE PRESENT SITUATION AND FORECASTS OF SEMICONDUCTOR ELEMENTS PERFORMANCE WITHIN THE MICROWAVE RANGE, 1970-1985 

Bertil Peterson<br>Research Institute of National Defenre

## Introduction

The main purpose of this report is to give an explorative /5* forecast for active semiconductor performance and characteristics within the microwave range around the year 1985. Starting with the available information in the scientific literature, various attempts have been made to find the outermost, physical limits for each component's function. When this has not been possible, more empirical evaluation methods have been used. Starting with recognized trends in development, the forecasted values are shown at a sufficient distance toward their "absolute" maximum values.

Since a technical forecast should be based on both theoretical models and earlier development history, every semiconductor device discussed here is characterized in a brief description of its mode of operation and its development up until 1970. The descriptions are at times more complete than would have been necessary solely for the purposes of forecasting, but this is due to the fact that the report is also hoped to be of use as a reference book covering the many new active semiconductor components which have been introduced during the $1960^{\prime}$ s. In the reference section after each chapter, the sources of more detailed descriptions of the respective semiconductor components are given. With this addition, the report will be of use to a significantly larger readership than that which is only interested in the forecasting aspects.

Due to the large scope of this report's subject matter, it is impossible for one author to have practical experience with all the discussed semiconductor devices or to have mastered the necessary theoretical background. Therefore, it is hoped that the forecasts presented here will form a basis for an inquiry of a number of specialties on their views on the future of semiconductor devices. If a sufficient number respond, it is planned that a revision and synthesis will later be published as an appendix to tnis report. It is hoped that this somewhat preliminary effort will develop into a better-organized final product.

Short Summary of the Development of Active Semiconductor Devices in the Microwave Range

Natural polycrystalline semiconductors were used within radio

[^0]technology as Aetactors at a very early stage. The electron vacuum tube, which at low frequencies yielded better detector and mixer results, was invented around 1925. As a result of this, the development of the crystal diode was temporarily halted. Around 1940, the rapidly growing interest in radar and microwave techniques again put the crystal diode in a position of importance. In particular, the diode was far superior to the converter tube as a mixer in a superheterodyne receiver in the microwave range.

During the subsequent development of semiconductor technology, silico: and germanium crystals were produced with much greater purity, and around 1943, it was discovered that extremely small additions or impurities could increase the qualities of the semiconductor. These technological improvements made possible the extremely significant invention of the transistor in 1948. At the beginning of the $1950^{\prime} \mathrm{s}$, methods for producing single crystal semiconductors of high purity through a combination of zone refining and the growth junction technique were improved. Diffusion replaced alloyage as a method for introducing impurities and, around 1960, planar and epitaxial processes were discovered. These permitted the inexpensive mass production of semiconductor elements with improved properties and with greater reproductability. Because of the refinement of semiconductor technology, a number of semiconductor diodes with new and interesting characteristics began to appear around 1958.

The first to appear were the tunnel diode and the varactor, both of which could be used in low-noise amplifiers. It appears that the very rapid development of these amplifiers was inspired by the discovery of the maser in 1956. The maser's function was $/ 7$ based upon simple quantum mechanical processes and yielded a still unsurpassed low-noise amplification. The major disadvantage was that the semiconductive maser needed to be cooled in liquid helium, and because of the desire to find a mechanism which could give lownoise amplification without cooling, the parametric amplifier, which was based on the non-linear reactance in a ferrite, was developed. Just two years later, the first feasible tunnel diode amplifiers and varactor diode parametric amplifiers were constructed.

The varactor diode made possible the construction of effective frequency multipliers, breakers, reversing switches, limiters, and phase shifters. At the beginning of the 1960 's, these circuit functions were greatly improved by two new types of diodes: the pin diode as a high-frequency breaker for high current, and the SR diode (step recovery) for frequency multiplications with a high multiplication factor.

Because of advances in epitaxial and planar processing, two new mixing diodes, both with low flicker effect, were introduced. They were the backward diode, which was developed from the tunnel diode, and the Schottky-barrier diode (Sb-diode) which is a renoded
metal semiconductor overlay.
Around 1963, a new phase of microwave generation began. Theoretical work during the period 1958-1962 had shown the possibilities of direct conversion of direct current to high-frequency power in pn diodes, in certain homogeneous semiconductors and in connection with tunneling through an isolated layer between two superconductive electrodes. Oscillations in homogeneous GaAs led to the development of the Gunn diode, which was named after its inventor. The Gunn diode soon received competition from the avalanche or ATT diode oscillators. (ATT is an abbreviation of "avalanche transit time.") In 1966, a variant of the Gunn diode was invented, called the LSA diode (from "limited space-charge accumulation"), which was characterized by the ability to produce very high peak power. Still another type of avalanche diode oscillator was introduced in 1967. Named the TRAPATT diode oscillator (from "trapped plasma avalanche triggered transit"), it was characterized by very high conversion efficiency and reliability at lower frequencies than the ATT diode. The supercon- $/ 8$ ductive oscillator, which is based on the Josephson effect, produces a very low power output and, therefore, has yet to become technically significant. The Josephson effect should, however, be exceptionally valuable in combination with basic electrical measurement techniques and continued research within the millimeter and sub-millimeter range.

New construction methods and improved photolithographical techniques led in 1964 to the production of transistors operating within the microwave range and as a natural result, to the development of attendant circuitry for amplifier and oscillator junctions produced in miniaturized form on the semiconductor substratum from which the transistor is produced. This began the development of integrated circuit technology in the microwave range and that development continued very rapidly. These same techniques proved to be useful for connections from electrical to acoustical microwave energy in the form of surface waves, and for conduction of these waves in a crystal. This led to new interest in the alreadyknown interaction between sound elements and electrons in homogeneous crystals. The surface waves created new possibilities for the so-called phononamplifier and the adherent methods for signal manipulation.

During the $1960^{\prime}$ s, the ever-increasing need for communications bandwidths has led to a broad research effort, partly within the optical region in connection with the development of the laser, and partly within the millimeter wave length region where all the earlier mentioned negative resistance diodes except for the oscillators have an even greater application in circulation-connected amplifiers. Highly developed techniques are necessary for the manufacture of semiconductor devices in the millimeter wave length range and toward the end of the $1960^{\prime}$ s, several new methods have been developed, of which 1 on implantation and electron resistance
are the most important. Ion implantation involves the producing of extremely well-controlled pn-overlays with regard to both the concentration of impurities and their location. The use of electron resist and electron beam exposure processing in connection with the production of various semiconductor and electrode patterns yields /9 much higher results than the normal photoresistance process.

This short history is presented schematically in Figure 1.
The most recent developments within semiconductor technology, as in many other areas, is characterized in general by the even greater utilization of very advanced numerical control methods. Thus, the semiconductor device, upon which modern data processing technology is based, has to a high degree begun to work toward its own development.

FIGURE 1: The development of active semiconductor devices for the microwave /l0 range.

```
1920
Year
```

| Double ATT diode
$1^{3-l e v e l ~ G u n n ~ d i o d e ~}$
TRAPATT diode
LSA diode
in ATT diode

Gunn diode
SR diode
Backward \& SB
diode
I pIn diode
| Varactor diode
$\left.\right|^{\text {Tunnel }}$ diode


| Semiconductor | Semiconductor <br> diodes | Other semi- <br> conductor de- functions <br> vices and special <br> phenomena |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |

Generation and Power Amplification

## The High Frequency Transistor

The first transistor, a point contact type, was constructed /11 in 1948 at Bell through the work of Bardeen, Brattain, and Shockley. The enormous significance that this event had for the development of semiconductors was soon demonstrated. In the meantime sixteen years passed before the transistor became usable within the microwave range. Several "milestones" in the development history of the transistor can be worth mentioning: in 1951 the junction transistor was produced; in 1955 the development of the interdigital transistor began; in 1957 the maser transistor was produced; in 1959 planar techniques (with oxide masking) began and in 1960 the production of active junctions through the epitaxial. process was started; during 1963 and 1964 the "overlay" transistor 1 , which made operations possible within the microwave range, was developed; in 1965 the first transistor capsule with channeled junctions, which produced lower parasitic reactions; in 1967 masking and photoresist processes were refined.

For a low level class A amplifier with a junction transistor (see for example 2,3 ):

The power amplification $G \simeq\left(\frac{\mathrm{f}_{\text {max }}}{\mathrm{f}}\right)^{2}$.
where $f_{\max }=\sqrt{\frac{\varrho_{0} f_{T}}{8 \pi r_{b} C_{c}}} \approx \sqrt{\frac{f_{r}}{\delta \pi r_{b} C_{c}}}=$ maximum oscillation frequency
$r_{b}=$ the base's dispersion resistance.
$C_{C}=p n$ capacitance.
$\alpha_{0}=$ power gain at low frequencies.
$f_{T}=1 / 2 \pi t_{e c}=$ the frequency at which the power gain $=1$ in a continuous $p$ coupling.
$t_{e c}=$ the signal delay time in the emitter-collector ${ }_{\alpha}$.
( $\mathrm{f}_{\alpha}$ is the frequency at which the power gain $\alpha=\frac{\alpha_{0}}{1+j \frac{f}{f_{\alpha}}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$
For a silicon transistor $f$ is $1.2 \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}$, and for a germanium transistor with bias it is $2 \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}$.)

Using the foregoing, we find:

$$
f_{\max } \approx \frac{1}{4} \sqrt{\frac{1}{r_{b} c_{c}^{t} e_{u}}}
$$

This formula is also a good approximation for class $C$ power amplifiers.

In constructing a high-frequency transistor it is necessary to maximize $f_{\text {max }}$. Therefore, $r_{b} C_{c}$ should be as small as possible. $C_{C}$ is minimized by allowing the depletion region to stretch over all of the collector junctions (approximately $1 \mu$ thick), while $r_{b}$ is minimized by the appropriate formation of the emitter-base electrodes. These commonly take the form of two groups of parallel, adjacent "fingers." It should be observed that the lengthening of the base (and emitter) electrodes increases $C_{C}$ while at the same time $r_{b}$ decreases, so that $f_{\text {max }}$ remains constant. The lengthening meanwhil.e brings about improved heat dissipation, increased current and therefore higher output.

The delay time, $t_{e c}$ should also be minimized. This is determined mainly by the electrification time of the emitter capacitance $C_{e}$ and the transit time through the base and the completion region in the collector. The former is proportionate to Ce but inversely proportionate to the emitter current. Therefore the highest possible emitter current is desired from the smallest emitter surface, or since the current originates mainly from the edge of the emitter, the largest possible length of the emitter's edge to its surface. The transit time through the base is minimized by reducing the thickness of the base as much as possible without increasing $r_{b}$, normally down to $0.3 \mu$. The transit time through the collector's depletion region is not minimized since it is advantageous to minimize $C_{C}$ by increasing the width of the depletion region, as was previously mentioned. The main improvements during the last years have been brought about by minimizing $t_{e c}$.

A power transistor must be able to withstand high potentials between the emitter and the collector without having avalanche breakdown occur. (This must also be true of the base and the collector, depending upon which junction is used; junctions with common bases are becoming more common and have several advantages.) High resistance in the collector-epitaxial junction yields a high breakdown potential, but creates disadvantages in the form of increased collector losses and increases the base junction thickness as current increases. This reduces $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}$.

Excepting the previously discussed $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}$, load resistance $\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{Lp}}$ influences the parallel circuit at the point of output and the corresponding input resistance $r_{e} s$ influences the acceptor circuit. This occurs according to the following formula [2]:

$$
\mathrm{G}=\frac{\left(\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}} / \mathrm{f}\right)^{2} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{Lp}}}{4 \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{es}}}
$$

$r_{\text {Lp }}$ is fixed by the desired power output value, ( (potential collector amplitude) ${ }^{2} / 2 r_{L} p$. $I_{T} / \mathrm{f}$, equal to the signal amplification, should be high. $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{es}}$ becomes small when the transistor's surface is large, i.e., the output power is high. But the emitter inductance $L_{e}$ increases the input resistance by
a value of $2 \pi f_{T} L_{e}$. This counteracts the decreasing of $R_{e s}$, and therefore $L_{e}$ decreases amplification. Naturally, $R_{e s}$ can not be made too small, since practical difficulties emerge in transforming it to impedance ir the signal source.

Efficiency is also significant in a power transistor. It is proportionate to $R_{U T P} / R_{L p}$, where $R_{U T p}$ is the parallel resistance in the transistor's output admittance.

In the case of small signals, $R_{U T p} \simeq \frac{1}{\omega t C_{C}}$, but with increasing power, $C_{C}$ increases to a maximum value of $\omega{ }^{C_{C}} 2 C_{C b}$, where $C_{c b}$ is the capacitance with the direct potential (overlay potential) $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Cb}}$. Therefore, $C_{\text {cbmust }}$ be minimized for maximum efficiency. $C_{C b}$ is composed of two partial capacitances, that between the collector and the base surface directly above the emitter electrodes ( $C_{c i}$ ), and that between the collector and the base surface between the emitter electrodes ( $C_{C y}$ ). In general, and particularly with a junction transistor, $C_{c y}$ is much larger than $C_{C i}$. Decreasing the base surface between theemitter electrodes would therefore be particularly effective as a means of decreasing $C_{C}$.

It has been found empirically that efficiency can be written /14 as $\eta \cong \log f_{\text {max }} / f$ [4]. At low frequencies, this has a constant value of approximately $80 \%$ (in class C) and within the lower microwave range this approaches $60 \%$.

The most important points in constructing a high-frequency power transistor can be summarized as follows:

1. The formation of the $n p$ electrodes is of fundamental importance for obtaining high power at high frequencies. To produce the necessary current, the emitter's edge should be as long as possible in relation to its surface. High current, in its turn, produces high power output and a maximization of the amplification-bandwidth product. The base electrode is designed so that the base current is diffused as evenly as possible. In other words, the diffusion resistance in the base is minimized.
2. The base layer is made as thin as possible without increasing dispersion resistance. In this way, the amplifi-cation-bandwidth product is maximized.
3. The collector-base capacitance is minimized as much as possible in order to increase the available amplification and efficiency. (By decreasing $C_{C}, f_{T}$ and $G$ are decreased, while $V_{B}$ and the highest level of power are increased.
4. The $n n$ and np breakdown potential must be large for a high level of high-frequency power. This normally requires a compromise between increased resistance capacitance and decreased efficiency and maximum frequency.
5. The active semiconductor chip is to be mounted so that heat dissipates as effectively as possible and lead-in resistance and inductance are as small as possible. In particular, the emitter inductance must he as small as possible in a power transistor so that amplification is not decreased.

There are two transistor constructions which more or less meet the above requirements. They are the interdigital transistor [5] /15 and the overlay transistor [1].


Figure 1. Interdigital structure a = base b $=$ emitter


Metal collector

In the first, the emitter takes the form of several strips :which are separated by interspersed space contacts (see figure 1). In the overlay transistor, many small emitter regions are diffused into and surrounded by the doped base contact region (see figure 2). The emitters are connected in parallel and with the base region. In this way, the electron configuration becomes very similar to that in the interdigital transistor. The number of small emitter regions is often. in the axound 100 . High-frequency power transistors are always made of silicon by the planar method with npn epitaxial junctions.

ORIGINAL PAGE IS
OF POOR QUALITY

Figure 2. Overlay structure $\mathrm{a}=$ base, $\mathrm{b}=$ emitter

The development of the power transistor can be shown graphically in the form of power frequency curves with the year of invention as the parameter. With the help of $[6,7,8$ and 9$]$, among others, the improvements in transistor performance which have been reached between the years 1958 and 1969 are shown in this manner in figure 3. (The curves are approximate mid-value curves, representing the best obtained values.) To evaluate the future development of the (bipolar) transistor the effect of new technological methods must be appreciat:ed. The expected transition from conventional photo resist techniques, where the transistor structure is determined through optical techniques, to the much more exact electron beam method, used in combination with electron-sensitive resistance layers, will be extremely significant. Furthermore, the production of very thin base layers by means of ion implantation will become possible. Today's current minimum width of approximately $1 \mu$ should through the electron beam method be reduced to approximately $0.1 \mu$. Further reductions will conflict when the transistor function is dependent on various dopedregions, since the distance of the impurity atoms is the order of $0.01 \mu$. Ion implantation can cause a reduction in the current minimum base layer of approximately $0.3 \mu$ by a factor of 0.2 , that is to say to approximately $0.06 \mu$. As a basis to the first major forecast for 1985 it can be said now that the refinement of the transistor structure will yield five times higher current with unchanged capacitance. The power output at relatively low frequencies, for example 1 GHz , should then increase five times from 20 to around l00W. The increased emitter current will also reduce $t_{e c}$, but since the size of $t_{\text {ee }}$ depends mainly on three factors which have previously been discussed, the decrease in $t_{e c}$ will be less than five, probably three times. By the same token, it is seen then that the five-time reduction of the base thickness will reduce $t_{\text {ec }}$ by a factor of three. This means that a total increase in $f_{T}$ by a factor of ten or $f_{\text {max }}$ by a factor of three should be possible. Therefore, since $f_{\max }$ in 1969 is near $10 \mathrm{GHz}, \mathrm{f}_{\text {max }}$ should in 1985 be around 30 GHz . Using these values, a forecast curve for 1985 has been drawn in figure 3 in such a way that it has about the same shape as the curve for 1969. It can be interesting to compare this forecast with several other published forecasts [10], which apply to the year 1971, and according to [11], which shows a theoretically calculated maximum limit (see figure 3 ).

In terms of $\mathrm{f}_{\text {max }}$, according to those mentioned above the highest obtained values for a bipolar transistor in 1969-1970 is approximately 10 GHz . This can be compared with a field-effect transistor of GaAs, produced using refined optical projection techniques with a width tolerance of $1 \mu$. This transistor yielded $f_{\text {max }} 30 \mathrm{GHz}$, which corresponds to 3 dB of power amplification at ${ }_{17} \mathrm{GHz}$ [12]. Such a transistor is usually reserved for small signal amplification or very rapid switching functions, while the


Figure 3.
$a=$ Maximum pulse power
$\mathrm{b}=$ Maximum CW power
c $=$ Forecast for 1971 according to [101
$d=$ Calculated upper limit according to
bipolar transistor will certainly be of use in the generation of /l8 higher power. Further information on the field-effect transistor is given in the section on low-noise transistors.

## Pulse Operation in the Transistor

Measurements and calculations in [4] show that pulse operations in high-frequency power transistors for the present produce peak ontputs which lie 2 to 5 times higher than the CW level and that in the future special pulse transistors will be able to produce values 10 times higher.

In [13], Johnson has calculated that the transistor's maximum frequency and power is limited by purely physical principles. If one ignores the heating of the semiconductor and the formation of the transistor structure, an absolute limit can be defined on the basis of how fast energy can be brought to the charge carriers in the semiconductor.

The masimum value for the transistor's cutoff frequency $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}$ ~ $1 / 2 \pi \tau$ will be limited chiefly by the transit time for the charges between the emitter and the collector. This distance can not be made smaller than $V_{\max } / E_{B}$, where $V_{\max }$ is the breakdown potential and $E_{B}$ is that field strength which produces breakdown. If the saturation speed for the charges is written $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{S}}$, we have ${ }^{\mathrm{T}} \mathrm{min}=$ $V_{\max } / E_{B} v_{S}$ and the maximum value for the cutof $f$ frequency

$$
\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}=\frac{\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{B}} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{S}}}{2 \pi \mathrm{~V}_{\max }}
$$

If the material constants $E_{B}$ and $V_{S}$ for $S i$ and $G e$ are inserted, we have $V_{\max } f_{T}=2 \cdot 1011 \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{s}$ and ${ }^{5} 10^{11} \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{s}$, respectively.

For a transistor to function, $V_{\text {max }}$ must produce in the charges an energy which is greater than that produced thermally. For silicon, the largest $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}$ with $\mathrm{V}_{\max }=1 \mathrm{~V}$ becomes:

$$
f_{\mathrm{Tmax}} \simeq 200 \mathrm{GHz}
$$

A comparison of the best available high-frequency transistors reveals that the product of their $V_{\max }$ and $f_{T}$ lies about 5 times lower than the theoretical maximum value. This is caused by irregularity in doning and the fact that the electrification time of the capacitance cannot be ignored. With regard to technolegical limits, it would then be reasonable to set $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{Tmax}} \approx 40 \mathrm{GHz}$.

Knowing that the current through the transistor can be shown as

$$
I_{\max }=\frac{Q_{\max }}{{ }^{{ }^{\min }}}=\frac{\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{C}} \mathrm{~V}_{\max }}{{ }^{{ }^{\mathrm{m}} \min }}
$$

the following relationghip, as in [13], can be established:

$$
I_{\max } V_{\max } \mathrm{X}_{\mathrm{O}} \mathrm{f} \frac{\mathrm{~T}}{2}=\left(\frac{\mathrm{S}_{\mathrm{B}}}{2 \pi}\right)^{2}
$$

where $I_{\text {max }}$ is equal to the maximum current through the transistor (which does not produce undesirable diffusion in the base junction), and the transistor's output impedance, $X_{O}=1 / 2 \pi f_{T} C_{C}$.

At low frequencies, the power output can be shown as

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{P}_{\max _{O}} & \leq\left(\frac{I_{\max }}{2 \sqrt{2}}\right)\left(\frac{V_{\max }}{2 \sqrt{2}}\right) \\
\therefore \mathrm{P}_{\max } & \leq 3 / \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}} \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{O}} \mathrm{~kW} \text { with } \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}} \text { in } \mathrm{GHz}
\end{aligned}
$$

## ORIGINAL PAGE IS OF POOR QUALTTY

According to [4], the efficiency for a class $C$ transistor amplifier can be written as

$$
\eta \simeq 0.7 \log \frac{f_{\max }}{f} \text { when } \mathrm{f}>0.1 \mathrm{f}_{\max }
$$

When $f<0.1 f_{\max }$ the constant $n=80 \%$. The output power when $\mathrm{f}>0.1 \mathrm{f}_{\text {max }}$ can then be written

$$
P_{\max }=\frac{5}{f_{T}^{2} x_{O}} 0.7 \log \frac{f_{\max }}{f}=\frac{3.5}{f_{T}^{2} x_{O}} \log \frac{f_{\max }}{f}
$$

Given that $\mathrm{f}_{\text {max }}=2 \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}$, which is normally the case with today's high-freçuency transistors [4], and that an $X_{o}$ value as small as $0.5 \Omega$ can be used, we have

$$
\mathrm{P}_{\max _{\mathrm{O}}} \simeq \frac{8}{\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}} \mathrm{~kW} \text { for } \mathrm{f}<0.2 \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}
$$

and $P_{\max } \simeq \frac{7}{f_{T}^{2}} \log \frac{2 f_{T}}{f} k W$ for $f>0.2 f_{T^{\prime}}$ with $f_{T}$ in both cases in GHz .

Calculating $P_{\text {max }}$ as a function of $f$ with $f_{T}$ varying from the aforementioned "absolute" maximum value of 40 GHz down to 1 GHz , produces a family of curves which are approximated by the outermost curve in figure 3, marked "Maximum peak power." Therefore, this curve represents the highest possible values which can be reached in pulse operation with $f_{T}$ optimized at every signal frequency. One further evaluation of the maximum CW power which a transistor can produce is now possible when it is taken into account, as previously discussed, that $C W$ power comes close to being one-tenth of peak power. The corresponding curve in figure 3 is marked "maximum CW power."

The forecast curve for 1985 which was produced with possible technical improvements in mind, lies somewhat under the "maximum CW" curve. The deviation is largest at low and high frequencies. At low $f$, it is hardly likely that transistors will be built with $P_{U T}>1 \mathrm{~kW}$, even if this were possible. It is more likely that the power output from several transistors in the $0.1-1.0 \mathrm{~kW}$ level will be combined when special high power is needed (lower impedance). The deviation at high frequencies occurs because the "maximum CW power" curve is based upon more than twice as high a high-limit frequency as the "1985" curve. The significant
technological problems with increasing the cutoff frequencr entails that the "1985" curve must be seen as more likely within the upper frequency ranges. As a compromise between the cwo curves, the lined area above the "1985" curve in figure 3 is presented as an area of possible results of the year 1985.

## A New Type of Transistor

The so-called metal-based transistor could become very significant for expanding the transistor's frequency range upward. As the name implies, the base electrode is formed by a metal plate which must be very thin, around 100 A in order to pass through emitter electrons. Furthermore, it must be of absolutely constant thickness. This construction produces in principle very low base resistance (approximately 80 times lower than in a semiconductor) and short transit time through the base. However, the technological problems with its development have so far been difficult to overcome. The outlook for this type of transistor is therefore very uncertain, but it is still worthy of mention here.

## REFERENCES

1. Carley, et al, "The Overlay Transistor, Part I," Electronics, (August 1965).
2. Lee, H.C., "Microwave Power Transistors," Microwave Journal, p. 51, (February 1969).
3. Cuccia, C.L., "Low Noise Microwave Transistors," Microwave Journal, p. 77, (February 1968).
4. Meyer, Auth, "Overlay Transistors as CW and Pulsed Oscillators," Microwave Journal, p. 59, (August 1969).
5. Tatum, J.G., "Fingers in the Die," Electronics, p. 98, (February 1968).
6. Webster, R., "Microwave Transistors," Microwave Journal, p. 99, (July 1966).
7. Carley, D., "A Worthy Challenger for $R-F$ Power Honors," Electronics, p. 98, (February 1968).
8. Gundlach, R. " $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{x}}$ for $\mathrm{R}-\mathrm{F}$ Power Transistors," Electronics, p. 84, (May 1969).
9. Small, T., "UHF and Microwave Devices, Present and Future," Texas Instruments Report, (1965).
10. Cooke, H., "Microwave Transistors, Part I: Power Devices," Microwaves, p. 46, (December 1969).
11. Magill, L.M., "Watt-Megahertz Ratings Run Second to High Reliability in Foreign R-F Power Transistors," Electronics, p. 88, (April 1970).
12. Drangeid, et al, "High-Speed GaAs SB Field-effect Transistors," Electronics Letters, p. 228, (April 1970).
13. Johnson, E.O., "Physical Limitations and Power Parameters of Transistors," RCA Revue, p. 163, (June 1965).

## The Frequency Multiplier

The nonlinear resistance in point-contact diodes was used at an early stage for the generation of harmonics. However, the very high diode losses entailed low efficiency ( $\leq 1 / n^{2}$, where $n$ stands for the multiplication factor):

Harmonics can also be generated by the nonlinear reactance which the voltage-produced variable capacitance in a varactor yields. Since the varactor is produced so that high-frequency losses arc small (high cutoff frequency), efficiency in the generation of harmonics can be very high.

Since the aim here is to evaluate maximum obtainable power levels, only frequency doublers will be discussed. These produce highest efficiency and power output. When a higher multiplication factor is needed, a cascade rectifier circuit with an appropriate number of doublers will yield the best results. Naturally, very high $n$ values can be used in connestion with low output power and the demand that the size of the multiplier be as small as possible. $n$ values of 3 and 4 are common with varactors, while values between 10 and 20 are common when using so-called SR (step recovery) diodes. In the case of the latter, for instance, an output frequency in the $X$-band is produced with only several hundred $m W$ output power with a maximum efficiency of $5 \%$.

An attempt to evaluate how thefunction of a frequency doubler is influenced by the varactor parameters will be made here. This is based of [1, figure 8.7]. See figure 4.

If a common value for $\mathrm{P}_{\text {diss, }} \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{B}}, \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{S}}$, and $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{C}}$ can be found, the broken lines in figure 4 give the maximum value for $f_{I N}$ (allowable dissipation) and the corresponding output power $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{UT}}$.

Instead of using the curve, the maximum $f_{I N}$ for any $P_{\text {iiss }}$ can be calculated from:

$$
f_{I N \max } \approx \frac{f_{c}}{V_{B}} \sqrt{2 R_{S} P_{d i s s}}\left(=\frac{1}{V_{B}} \sqrt{\frac{f_{c}^{P}{ }^{P} d_{i s s}}{\pi C_{j}}}\right)
$$

Efficiency, which is a function of $f_{N N} / f_{C}$, is determined m. Jst simply then from figure 5. (According to [1, figure 8.7] or [2, figure 12].) Therefore, the power output is calculated as:

$$
P_{U T}=\frac{\eta}{1-\eta} P_{\text {diss }} .
$$

The desired common value for $\mathrm{P}_{\text {diss }}, \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{B}}, \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{S}}$, and $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{C}}$ can be determined empirically by studying the varactor data collected in figure 6.


Figure 4.


Figure 5.

The desired relationship between $P_{\text {diss }}^{\prime} V_{B}, R_{G}$ and $f_{C}{ }_{c}$.
can be determined empirically from the data in figure 6.

Because of improved heat dissipation, it can be assumed that by $1985 \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{d}}$ iss will have increased by a factor of 2 for all $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{B}}$ values (see "1985" curve in figure 6a). Also, it is assumed that $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{c}}$ will more than double for all $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{B}}$ values (see " $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{C}}$ 1985" curve in figure 6b), mainly by reducing the series resistance in half.
( $C_{j}$ remains approximately unchanged so that the input resistance and the load resistance, both proportional to $1 / \omega$ IN $C_{j}$, also are unchanged. According to the shape of ${ }^{\text {I INMax }}$, the result will be a doubling in 1985 ("finmax" curve in figure 6b). With the aid of the "l985" curve in figure 6, PUT can now be calculated as a function of $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{UT}}$ for the year 1985. See table 1.

Table 1. Caiculated maximum power output for frequency doublers. /26

| $\begin{aligned} & \mathbf{f}_{\mathrm{IN}} \\ & \mathrm{GHz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{UT}} \\ & \mathrm{GHz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathbf{f}_{\mathrm{c}} \\ & \mathrm{cHz} \end{aligned}$ | $\eta$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{P}_{\text {diss }} \\ & \mathrm{W} \end{aligned}$ | $P_{W}=\frac{\eta}{1-n} P_{\text {diss }}$ | $\text { Necessary } \cdot{ }_{\text {IN }}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 2 | 75 | 0,75 | 60 | 180 | 240 |
| 5 | 10 | 200 | 0,63 | 30 | 51 | 81 |
| 10 | 220 | 350 | 0,60 | 19 | 28 | 47 |
| 50 | 100 | 900 | 0,40 | 7 | 4,6 | 11,6 |
| 12า | 200 | 1500 | 0,30 | 4 | 1,7 | 5,7 |
| 200 | 400 | 1500 | 0,10 | 1 | 0,1 | 1 |

$\mathrm{P}_{\text {diss }}$ (or $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{UT}}$ ) is calculated according to [l] based on the following assumptions:

$$
\left(\frac{\frac{1}{C_{\min }}-\frac{1}{C_{0}}}{\frac{1}{C_{\min }}+\frac{1}{C_{0}}}\right)^{2}=1
$$



Fig:res 6A and 6B.
and that

$$
f_{c}=\frac{\frac{1}{C_{\min }}-\frac{1}{c}}{2 \pi R_{S}}=\frac{1}{2 \pi C_{\min } R_{S}}
$$

which can be restated as $\frac{1}{C_{o}} \ll \frac{1}{C_{\min }}$. But $C(V)=\frac{C_{0}}{\sqrt{1-V / 0.5}}$ for an
abrupt junction.
With $V_{B}=6 \mathrm{~V}$, we obtain $C(-6)=0.28 C_{0}$.
According to equation 8.42 in [1], PUT at $V_{B}=6 \mathrm{~V}$, which is to say that $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{UT}}=100 \mathrm{GHz}$, is multiplied by a factor of

$$
k=\left(\frac{\frac{c_{0}}{C_{\min }}-1}{\frac{c_{0}}{C_{\min }}+1}\right) \cdot\left(1-\frac{c_{\min }}{c_{0}}\right) \approx c_{9} \text {; for } \frac{c_{\min }}{c_{0}}=0,28
$$

At $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{UT}}=2 \mathrm{GHz}$, this factor $\mathrm{k} \simeq 0.85$.
Furthermore, variations in circuit loss with $f$ can be introduced according to the following:
tration) and
Figure of merit $Q \sim \frac{\lambda}{\delta} \sim \sqrt{\lambda} \sim \sqrt{1 / \overline{\mathrm{F}}}(\delta=$ depth of pene-

$$
Q_{0}=2 \pi=\frac{\text { stored energy }}{\text { lossed energy per period }}
$$

to This yields the result that the power loss is proportionate



These corrected power values have been incorporated in
figure 7 and are labeled "Calculations for 1985." As was shown above, this calculation is based on evaluated varactor data for the year 1985.

It can be interesting to test the same method of calculation on the basis of known varactor data for the year 1969. (Since both $f_{I N}$ and $f_{c}$ according to figure $6 B$ were doubled from 1969 to 1985, the efficiency remains constant according to figure 5 despite the doubled frequency. At the same time, according to figure 6A, Pdiss will double, which in turn will double PuT. The desired curve for 1969 can be calculated easily by ta'ting half of both $P_{\text {UT }}$ and $f_{\text {UT }}$ in the calculations for 1985 .) The resulting curve is shown in figure 7, marked "Calculation for 1969." The typical nowers reached in the yeazs 1962, 1967 and 1969 ("state of art") are also shown in figure 7. It is of particular interest now to determine that the calculations for 1969 yield significantly higher output power than what is in reality the case. For this reason the calculated powers for 1985 should also be too large. A reduction of the values calculated for the 1985 curve in proportion to the difference between the calculated and the actual power values for 1969 should therefore yield a likely forecast curve, labeled "Forecast 1985" in figure 7. It has been shown in [2] that the maximum power output in a varactor with an abrupt junction can be increased by a factor of 4 in relation to the maximum value according to [1], if the varactor is overdriven in the forward bias region. When taking into account the highest allowable power losses in the varactor, the increase in power which can be utilized becomes insignificant. The efficiency without overdriving lies between 10 and $70 \%$ (as in table 1), and overdriving will yield 13 to $73 \%$, in other words an increase in power output of 34 to $16 \%$. In a graduated junction with an $n$ value somewhat under 0.1 (the $n$ value is the exponent which determines the currentdependent junction capacitance), efficiency can be further increased approximately $5 \%$ in comparison to an abrupt junction. This corresponds to a $20 \%$ increase in power output. Therefore, overdriving can produce a $50 \%$ increase in the power values of the forecast curve (shown by the lined area in figure 7). If thernal problems are ignored, the maximum peak power according to [1] can be calculated from:


Figure 7.

$$
P_{U T}=0.002 \frac{V_{B}^{2}}{R_{S}} \quad\left(\text { for } f_{I N} / f_{C} \geq 0.1\right)
$$

Judging from the previously shown varactor data curves and the assumptions for 1985 , varactors with $V_{B} \approx 300 \mathrm{~V}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{S}} \simeq 0.2$ ohm can be expected. These yield $P_{U T} \max ^{\sim} 1 \mathrm{~kW}$ for frequencics greater than 5 GHz . By overdriving the varactor, the absolute limit becomes \approximately 4 kW . The efficiency is given by $\eta=0.39$ $\left(\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{C}} / \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{IN}}\right.$ ) ${ }^{2}$. (For example, in the X-band $\mathrm{n}=5 \%$ with $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{C}}=35 \mathrm{GHz}$ for $\left.V_{B}=300 \mathrm{~V}.\right)$ Difficult transient phenomena resulting from thermal and other causes can in the meantime be expected to arise with pulse operation of the frequency multiplier.

The maximum power level in a varactor, without regard to
thermal problems, can also be evaluated according to a method given by De Loach [5]. The calculation is based in terms of the maximum voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{m}}$ which can be applied to the varactor's depletion region $L$ without causing breakdown, and on the shortest time which is necessary to elininate the charges at saturation speed $v_{s}$ and to create the depletion region. When $\tau=L / v_{S}$, one half the perind of the maximun frequency $f_{\tau}, f_{\tau}=v_{S} / 2 L$.

The calculation yields the following expression for the maximum power which (at a $100 \%$ efficiency level) can be converted to the frequency $f_{\tau}$ :
where

$$
\begin{aligned}
& C y f_{\tau}: \\
& P_{m}=\frac{1}{X_{\tau} f_{\tau}^{2}} \frac{E_{C}^{2} v_{S}^{2}}{4 \pi}(m+1)^{\frac{1}{m}} \\
& E_{C}=\left(2 f_{\tau} / v_{S} \alpha_{O}\right)^{\frac{1}{m}}=E_{B}(m+1)^{-\frac{1}{m}}
\end{aligned}
$$

ORIGINAL PAGE IS OF POOR QUALITY
and $\quad E_{B}=$ the field strength which produces breakdown $\alpha_{0}=$ an ionization constant $m=$ constant $X_{\tau}=\frac{1}{2 \pi f_{\tau} C_{m i n}}$
For silicon, $E_{B} \simeq 3 \cdot 10^{5} \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{cm}, \mathrm{m} \simeq 6$ and $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{S}} \simeq 10^{7} \mathrm{~cm} / \mathrm{s}$.
At 2 constant impedance level, $P_{p}$ is proportional to $f_{\tau}^{-1.67}$ and if one assumes that the impedance level must increase in proportion to $f_{\tau}^{-1 / 2}$, the variatior of $P_{m}$ can be described as $f_{\tau}^{-2.17}$. (This is approximated as $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{m}} \sim \mathrm{f}_{\tau}^{-2}$.) The above values yield:

$$
P_{\mathrm{m}}=\frac{1}{\mathrm{X}_{\tau}}\left(\frac{800}{\mathrm{f}_{\tau}[\mathrm{GHz}]}\right) \quad[\mathrm{W}] .
$$

According to the catalog data for varactors, $C_{j}=3 \mathrm{pF}$ is a typical value with an output frequency of 4 GHz and 0.3 pF is typical at 20 GHz . If one assumes that $\mathrm{C}_{j}$ and with it the impedance level in the future must remain unchanged, two values for $D_{m}$ can be calculated from these values: 3 kN at 4 GHz and 60 W at 20 GHz . These points are shown in figure 7 and through them is drawn the $P_{U T} \sim f^{-2}$ line. The relatively high level of impedance at 20 GHz have evidently $r \in d u c e d P_{m}$ unnecessarily. Therefore, $a$ line between these two, labeled "maximum pulse power," has been chosen as an "absolute" value for $P_{U T}$.

## The Use of Multiple Varactors

The maxiumum values derived from single varactors, which have previously been discussed, can naturally be increased significantly by the summation of the output powers from several varactors in separate circuits. However, the power level can also be increased buy using a multiple varactor. In this case, several semiconductor chips are sonnected either serially or in parallel, or bnth in series and in parallel, in order to obtain the appropriate level of impedance. The power levels obtained through such a combination technique is very hard to predict. It should, however, be possible
with a multiple varactor consisting of $3 \times 3$ or $4 \times 4$ diodes in a series-parallel combination. According to the experiments performed in [6], the power output increases approximately quadratically with the number of serially connected varactors, which means that the hypothetical multiple varactor should he able to produce at least 100 times more powei output that a single varactor, assuming that heat dissipation problems do not set a lower limit. Preliminary attempts to develop a special capsule for a multiple varactor have been reported [7]. This capsule could conduct away heat at least 20 times more effecticely that the normal power varactor case. Future multiple varactors can therefore be expected to produce 10 to 100 times higher power levels than what was presented in the previous forecast curves.

Bandwidth of the Frequency Multiplier
In commercially available multipliers, the bandwidth rarely exceeds 5\%, and only in exceptional cases almost exceeds $10 \%$.

Calculations by a number of authors (see the summary in [2]), have shown that a $30 \%$ bandwidth should be possible with simple tuning of the input and output circuits in a doubler, using a varactor with low parasitic reactance. With multiple input and output circuits, 66 to $80 \%$ bandwidth should be obtained, in other words, the octave level or higher. The former level has been produced experimentally [8] in a coupling consisting of a pair of varactors adapted with 5 circuits and which produced 2 to 4 GHz ( $66 \%$ ) with an efficiency level of $50 \%$. Bandwidths much over an octave can hardly be expected in the future, but octave bandwiath should he obtained up to the X-band with $40 \%$ efficiency. Naturally, efficiency declines with increased bandwidth, so if, for example, the source of the $X$-band is made narrow (10\%), the efficiency should increase to around $70 \%$, accoiding to [2, p. 222, figure 41].

## Noise Characteristics of Frequency Multipliers

According to calculations, the noise factor in the frequency multiplying function of the varactor is highly insignificant except for those unavoidable increases produced through frequency multiplication. The total frequency noise in the multiplier's output is therefore nearly equal to $n$ times the noise in the input, where $n$ is the multiplication factor[9]. In this manner, the contribution of FM noise is calculated as $\Delta f_{r m s}<0.1 \mathrm{~Hz}$ at $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{m}}=10 \mathrm{kHz}$ and $\Delta \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{rms}}<1 \mathrm{~Hz}$ at $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{m}}=100 \mathrm{kHz}$ within 1 kHz bandwidth. Multipliers $/ 3$ are normally used in crystal stabilized, cavity stabilized, or varactor-tuned transistor-oscillators and followed by a transistoramplifier. Because of this, it can be appropriate to discuss the noise additions from various active components and the size of the noise with various stabilization from the ground oscillator.

A varactor-tuned transistor-oscillator, followed by a
multiplier, typically yields in the X -band $\Delta \mathrm{ff}_{\mathrm{rms}} \approx 100 \mathrm{~Hz}$ for $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{m}}=1-10 \mathrm{kHz}$ (within i Khz bandwidth). The corresponding value for a crystal-tuned oscillator with an amplifier before the multiplier lies around 1 Hz , but when $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{m}}>10 \mathrm{kHz}$, the frequency noise begins to rise and when $f_{\mathrm{m}} \approx 200 \mathrm{kHz}$ it has increased by a factor of 10 and at 1 MHz by a factor of 100. This increase in noise stems from the phase noise in the power amplifier. In a cavity-tuned ascillator, $\Delta f_{r m s}=10 \mathrm{~Hz}$ when $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{m}}=1 \mathrm{kHz}$, but as $f_{m}$ increases, the noise decreases and at $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{m}}=100 \mathrm{kHz}$ is less than 1 Hz . This shows that a combination of crystal and cavity switching can produce interesting results[10].

Future improvements of an oscillator-multiplier's noise characteristics can be expected to occur along the following lines:

1. New types of crystals and improved transistors will increase the ground oscillator's frequency significantly and consequently decrease the required multiplication factor.
2. The noise factor in a power amplifier will be reduced.
3. The use of various feedback-reducing circuits will increase.

It can be guessed that these methods will be able to reduce frequency noise by a factor on the order of 10 and consequently produce nearly as good noise data as the best klystron oscillators.

Amplitude noise, which was not mentioned above, is much lower than frequency noise and normally lies about 120 dB under the signal power.

## REFERENCES

1. Penfield, Rafuse, "Varactor Applications," MIT Press, (1962). /34
2. Scanlan, J.O., "Analysis of Varactor Harmonic Generators," Advances in Microwaves, Academic Press, pp. 165 - 236, (1967).
3. Penfield, P., "Maximum cut-off frequency of Varactor Diodes," Proc. IEEE, pp. 422-423, (April 1965).
4. Watson, H.A., Microwave Semíconductor Devices and their Circuit Applications, McGraw-Hill, p. 243, (1969).
5. De Loach, B. . "Recent advances in solid-state microwave generators," Advances in Microwaves, Academic Press, pp. 43 - 88, (1967).
6. Irwin, Shaw, "A composite varactor for simultaneous high power and high efficiency harmonic generation," Trans. IEEE, ED, pp. 466-471, (May 1969).
7. Tang, D., "High power package for multichip application," Trans. IEEE, pp. 799 - 800, (May 1969).
8. Kotzebue, Matthaei, "The design of broad-band frequency doublers using charge-storage diodes," Trans. IEEE, MTT, p. 1077, (December 1969).
9. Frilley, Grandchamp, "Design of low-noise solid-state microwave sources," Proc. of Microwave Applications of Semiconductors, London, (July 1965).
10. Back, I., "Reducering av FM-brus hos en FT-generator pa Xbandet," KTH report, (December 1967).

In 1958, D. Read [1] showed how a semiconductor diode of /35 special construction would be able to function as a microwave oscillator. The avalanche breakdown in an abrupt pn junction was shown to produce a current which lay $90^{\circ}$ after the applied voltage, and if the charges were allowed to pass through a drift field of sufficient length, consisting of an intrinsic semiconductor in which the charges move at the saturation speed, an additional $90^{\circ}$ current delay was produced. Such a Read diode (pnin or npip) should then yield a negative resistance atound the transit-time frequency and as a microwave oscillator produce an efficiency of $30 \%$. However, this type of diode was difficult to produce and not until 1966 was a Read diode able to oscillate within the microwave range. One year earlier [2], X-band oscillations were generated in pulse operations with a normal pn junation, in which the breakdown and drift-space regions were combined. This was name the ATT oscillator, after "Avalanche Transit Time." After optimizing the doping profile and improving the heat insulation, both pn and pin diodes could generate CW power between 5 and 50 GHz with approximately $10 \%$ efficiency. Bell later coined the name IMPATT for this oscillator (from "IMPact Avalanch Transit Time").

A new phase in the development of the avalanche diode oscillator was begun in 1967. Several researchers at RCA [3] observed high power output and very high efficiency with the generation of a harmonic to the transit-time frequency. An ATT diode with a transit-time frequency within the $X$-band when coupled with a double resonance circuit produced a pulse operation of several hundred watts around 1 GHz with up to $60 \%$ efficiency. This diode, like several other ATT diodes, was made of silicon. Later, germanium diodes also produced CW oscillations in the highly effective "anormal" mode ( $5 \mathrm{~W}, 0.5 \mathrm{GHz}, 43 \%$ ) [4]. Several partially conflicting theoretical explanations for the function of the anormal mode have been offered in 1969 and this has resulted in nearly as many new names for the oscillator. Bell has, for example, proposed the "TRAPATT" mode (from "TRApped Plasma Avalanch Triggered Transit") $[5,6]$, and Cornell University has suggested "ARP mode" (from Avalanche Resonance Pumped") $[8 ; 9]$. The common ground between the various theories is still that a normal transit-time oscillation is presumed to be necessary in order to start the low-frequency switching between high current-low voltage and high voltage-low current, which characterizes the TRAPATT mode and produces the high level of efficiency. Experiments to date show that the efficiency increases with the ratio of the transit-time frequency to the output frequency, and that a ratio of 2 produces $10 \%$ efficiency. The negative resistance is both the ATT and the TRAPATT mode has also been used in the construction of circulator-coupled microwave amplifiers with high output power.

According to De Loach [10], the absolute power-frequency limit can be most easily evaluated in a Read-type avalanche diode. The condition that the avalanche breakdown shall not occur in the drift region of length $L$ yields the maximum voltage $V_{T M}=E_{B}{ }^{L}$. The maximum value of the charge which ban be injected in the drift region is determined by the field strength which on the one edge is $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{B}}$ and on the other edge must not be less than that field $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{s}}$ which gives the charges the saturation speed $v_{S}$. The maximum current $I_{m}=$ $\mathrm{dQ}_{\mathrm{m}} / \mathrm{dt}=\mathrm{C}(\delta v / \delta x)(\delta \mathrm{x} / \delta \mathrm{t})$ the becomes (using maximum E and minimum v) approximate $I y I_{m}=C E_{B} V_{s}$, where $C$ is the capacitance in the drift region. If it is assumed as earlier that the maximum frequency $f_{m}=v_{S} / 2 L$ (which allows the whole charge to emerge during one-half Of a period), then

$$
P_{m} x_{C} f_{m}^{2}=\frac{E_{B}^{2} v_{S}^{2}}{4 \pi} \text {, where } P_{m}=I_{m} V_{m} \text {, the maximum power which can }
$$

be fed into the diode.

$$
X_{C}=\frac{1}{2 \pi f_{\mathfrak{m}}^{C}} \text { with } C=\varepsilon_{\frac{A}{L}}^{\frac{A}{L}}
$$

Considering that $V_{B}$ varies somewhat with $I$, and that the impedance level, as earlier presented, should increase proportionally to $\sqrt{\mathcal{F}_{m}}$, it can be shown that $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{m}}$ is proportional to $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{m}}^{-8.17}=\mathrm{f}^{-2}$. In [10], it is predicted for avalanche diodes with common breakdown and transit-time regions that $V_{m}$ and also $I_{m}$ (since the current will be produced by both the holes and the electrodes) will double. This yields

$$
P_{m} X_{C} f_{m}^{2}=\frac{E_{B}^{2} v_{s}}{\pi}
$$

With $E_{B} \simeq 300 \mathrm{kV} / \mathrm{cm}$ and $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{S}}=10^{7} \mathrm{~cm} / \mathrm{s}$ (the value for silicon), the absolute limit (at 100\% efficiency) for power as a function of frequency should result from the expression

$$
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{m}}=\frac{3 \cdot 10^{6}}{\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{m}}^{2}[\mathrm{GHz}] \mathrm{X}_{\mathrm{C}}}
$$

In order to approximate a practical maximum power limit with pulse operationsp one can use a $10 \%$ efficiency level and a diode capacitance large enough for $X_{C}$ to be near 1. In this case

$$
P_{\text {peak }}=\frac{3 \cdot 10^{5}}{\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{m}}^{2}[\mathrm{GHz}]}[\mathrm{W}]
$$

A curve constructed from this formula is drawn in figure 9 and Iabeled "Maximum peak power. $\eta=10 \%$, [10]."

In $[8,9]$, Hofflinger has given a method for calculating the product of the power output and the load resistance for both the normal ATT (or transit-time) mode and the ARP mode. His method
for calculating the transit-time mode is briefly recapitulated here. The product of the output power and the load resistance can be written

$$
\begin{array}{r}
P_{U T} R_{L}=V_{B}^{I \eta R_{L}} \\
\text { With } R_{L}=r \frac{L^{2}}{E V_{S} A}
\end{array}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
V_{B} & =E_{B} I_{1}, \\
I & =J_{0} A \\
J_{O} & =\frac{\varepsilon V_{S}}{\lambda L_{H}} j \\
\theta & =2 \pi E \frac{I}{V_{S}}
\end{aligned}
$$

we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{UT}} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{L}}=\left.n r j \theta^{2} \times \quad \mathrm{V}_{\frac{S}{2}}^{2 \pi}\right)^{\frac{\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{B}}}{\lambda}} \times \frac{1}{\mathrm{f}^{2}} \\
& \text { scaling } \\
& \text { factor } \\
& \text { material } \\
& \text { factor } \text { frequency } \\
& \text { factor }
\end{aligned}
$$

In the above expressions, the following are:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \varepsilon=\text { the semiconductor's dielectric constant }\left(10^{-12} \mathrm{As} / \mathrm{Vcm}\right. \\
& \text { for } \mathrm{Si} \text { ) } \\
& v_{S}=\text { the saturation speed of the charges ( } 10^{7} \mathrm{~cm} / \mathrm{s} \text { ) } \\
& L=\text { the thickness of the active semiconductor junction } \\
& A=\text { the cross-sectional surface of the active semiconduc- } \\
& \text { tor junction } \\
& \lambda=\text { an ionization parameter defined from the expression } \\
& \text { for the ionization speed } \alpha=\alpha_{0} e^{\bar{\lambda} E} \text { and therefore } \\
& =(\mathrm{d} \alpha / \mathrm{dE}) / \mathrm{\alpha} \mathrm{~cm} / \mathrm{v} \\
& E_{B}=\text { the average field strength at breakdown } \\
& J_{0}=\text { the current density } \\
& r \text { = the normalized load impedance } \\
& j=\text { the normalized current density } \\
& \theta=\text { the transit-time angle. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Both calculations and measurements show that a relatively high negative resistance combined with maximum efficiency is obtained when the transit-time angle is 2 radians. The avalanche resonance frequency $w_{A}$ indicates that the avalanche area's equivalent paralLel reactance is infinitely large and that the negative resistance is maximized, should also lie near the transit-time frequency. With the following expressions for ${ }^{\prime}$ :

$$
w_{A}^{2}=\frac{2.7 v_{\mathrm{S}}}{E \mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{G}}} \lambda J_{O}=\mathrm{w}^{2}
$$

and

$$
\theta=w_{V_{S}}^{L_{1}}=2
$$

We obtain $J_{0}=1.5 \frac{\varepsilon V_{S}}{\lambda I}$. In other words, $j$ is a constant equal to $/ 39$ 1.5 .

Hofflinger shows that $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{B}}=\mathrm{f}\left(\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{A}}\right)$ and $\lambda=\mathrm{f}\left(\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{B}}\right)$. For a particular transit-time angle, $f$ will determine $I$, L will determine $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{B}}$, and $E_{B}$ will determine $\lambda$. The ratio $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{B}} / \lambda$ will, therefore, represent a certain frequency deperdence. All the factors in the product $\underline{P}_{U T} R_{\mathrm{L}}$ are determined without $r$ and $\eta$. $r$ can, for instance, be determined by measuring the impedance in a diode oscillator (this will yield the large signal value for $r$; the small signal value can be otherwise calculated), while $\eta$ can be set approximately equal. to 0.1 ([8] indicates that $\eta$ varies between $\theta$ and $j$ ).

The end result of calculating $P_{U r} R_{L}$ as a function of frequency is shown in figure 8 and is proportionate to $f^{-1.6}$. The deviation from $f^{-2}$ occurs because of the frequency dependency with $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{B}} / \lambda$. The curve is valid for $S i$ (or Gaiss) diodes. The values produced by Ge are 4 times less.

Hofflinger also reports in [9] that the total thermal resistance $R_{T}$ for a circular si disc as a function of its surface, $A$, with ideal mounting on a diamond heat sink (see [23] for a detailed discussion of heat problems in ATT diodes). For any particular frequency, the amount of power per unit of surface, $P_{\text {IN }}$, which is required to make the diode oscillate can be calculated. The totai power $P_{I N}=P_{I N}{ }^{A}$ yields the temperature rise in the diode $\Delta T=P_{T N} A_{T} r$ which, therefore, is a function of the diode surface and, through PiN, dependent upon frequency. (With earlier descriptions, the calculation of $P_{I N}$ can be explained in the following manner: at any particular frequency there are determined values for $L_{1}, E_{D}$ and $\lambda$ which determine the current density $J_{0}$, the diode voltage $V_{D}=E_{B} L$ and consequently $p_{I N}=J_{O} V_{D}$ ). For example, then, at the frequencies 3,10 , and 50 GHz , the Current density will equal 300,1300 and $12,000 \mathrm{~A} / \mathrm{cm}^{2}$, and the diode voltage will be ap- 4 proximately equal to 250590 and 24 V . In other words, $p_{\text {IN }}=7 \cdot 10^{4}$, $1.2 \cdot 10^{5}$ and $2.9 .10^{5} \mathrm{~W} / \mathrm{cm}^{2}$. With an allowable temperature rise of $\Delta T=180^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, the maximum diode surfaces are approximately $2 \cdot 10^{-3} \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ ( 3 GHz ) , $10^{-3} \mathrm{~cm}^{2}\left(10 \mathrm{GHz}\right.$ ) and $10^{-4} \mathrm{~cm}(50 \mathrm{GHz})$. The corresponding maximum input power becomes 140 Wr 120 W and 29 W . The $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{UT}} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{L}}$ curve in figure 3 gives the corresponding load resistance of 36 , $6^{\text {L }}$ and 2 ohm.

The highest conceivable peak power is yielded from the $P_{U T} \mathbb{R}_{I}$ curve in figure 8 under the assumption that the lowest feasible load resistance is 1 ohm. This the produces 500 W at 3 GHz , 75 W at $10 \mathrm{GHz}, 6 \mathrm{~W}$ at 50 GHz and 2 W at 100 GHz . The aforementioned maximum $C W$ and peak power as a function of frequency are shown in figure 9, where the best obtained laboratory results for the years


Figure 8. The product of the power output times the load resistance for ATT and ARP oscillators according to [8,9].

For the anormal mode, Hofflinger [9] has used several sim- /4I plifying assumptions to estimate the product

$$
P_{U T} R_{L}=\frac{V_{B}^{2}}{16}
$$

in which a $50 \%$ efficiency level is given. If this high efficiency level could be reached with one-half the transit-time frequency, the outpui frequency would correspond to $\theta=1$ radian. The transittime frequency 20 GHz , which requireds that $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{B}}=320 \mathrm{kV} / \mathrm{cm}$ and $\mathrm{L}=1.8 \cdot 10^{-4} \mathrm{~cm}$, so that $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{B}}=58 \mathrm{~V}$, would then produce $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{UT}} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{L}}=200 \mathrm{~W} \Omega$ at 10 GHz . In fugure 8, the curve labeled "ARP mode" was calculated in this manner.


Figure 9. Power output for ATT diodes as a function of frequency.

According to [9], the feeding power of a diode in the ARP mode $/ 42$ is 2 to 3 times larger compared to a ATT diode with the same dimersions. (The necessary current density is approximately 5 times higher, but the working voltage is only half as large due to current rectification, which therefore produces a power factor of 2.5.) The higher efficiency in the ARP mode means that the loss effect is approximately the same as in the ATT mode, and also in this way the temperature rise is the same. Assuming that the feeding power is 2 times higher and the efficiency is 5 times higher in the ARP mode, the output power will be 10 times higher than that in an equally large ATT diode. The power, however, is produced at a ferequincy which yields a harmonic to the transit- time frequency and in
the best case is equal to one-half the transit-time frequency. The maximum CW power in this case is shown in figure 10 . Also shown is the maximum peak power which can be reached given the assumption that the load can be transformed to 1 ohm. The best results obtained to date with the anormal mode are also shown.


Figure 10. Power output in the ARP or TRAPATT mode.

Later work by Evans and Scharfetter [24,25] has produced good correlation between experiments and calculations and as a result is in strong support of the TRAPATT mode theory. In [25], CW and peak power is calculated for a TRAPATT diode working at one-third of the transit-time frequency, with $R_{L}=10$ ohm and a level of efficiency between 40 and $50 \%$. The results of the calculations are presented in figure 10. Given that $\mathbb{P}_{U T} R_{L}$ is a constant, the estimation of 1 ohm is in good agreement with the maximum peak power obtained by [9]. The CW power is then somewhat smaller than the curve presented
by [9] at low frequencies and somewhat larger at frequencies over 10 GHz (Information on the heat sink is missing.)

Continuing experimental research has shown that when ground oscillations in the TRAPATT mode are not charged, power can be extracted from harmonics with fairly good efficiency. However, data published to date indicates that improvements will hardly be possible in conjunction with the above forecast. From'its discovery in 1965 until 1967, the ATM diode was developed very rapidiy, mostly because the necessary silicon technology already existed. The high CW and peak power which was obtain in research laboratories in 1967 have still, with some exceptions, not been surpassed. This indicates that continuing improvements in performance should occur at a slow pace. Present efficiency levels between 5 and $10 \%$ will be raised to 15 to 20 号, according to newly present large signal calculations [12,13] in Read diodes. With improvements in efficiency of this magnitude up until 1985, power output can be expected to be approximately twice as large as calculated in [9] for both CW and pulse operation, or approximately 20 W CW in the X -band. The newly begun cevelopment of a double diode [26] could bring about further improvements. Such a diode consists of a ptpnnt formation, differing from the usual, which is either $\mathrm{p}^{+} \mathrm{nn}^{+}$or $\mathrm{n}^{+} \mathrm{pp}^{+}$ formation. The maximum field used to produce avalanche breakdown is located in the middle of the diode and on the respective sides there is one drift region for electrons and one for holes. This means that the output power per unit of surface area is approximately doubled and that the impedance per surface unit is also doubled. The product of the power output and the impedance will then be 4 times larger than in a normal ATT diode with a arift region. At the same time, improved efficiency is obtained. Diodes manufactured through ion implantation have already produced 1 WCW with 50 GHz with an efficiency of 13.3 [27], compared to the maximum of 0.45 W from a simple diode.

With an assumed efficiency of $15 \%$, the maximum power limit with pulsed operation will total approximately 6 times higher than given in [9]. However, difficulties in connection with high CW power will arise with a two-sided heat sink, and will lead to a significantly lower power increase. The likely increase factor will lie around 4. This power limit for double diodes is shown in figure 9. Because the current-displacement phenomena in the substrate at very high frequencies leads to an uneven current density distribution in circular diodes, the efficiency level will decrease significantly [14]. If one assumes a value of 15 to $20 \%$ with the X-band, the value at 100 GHz will have fallen to at least $10 \%$. This estimate is based upon the fact that to date the best obtained efficiency levels within the $X$-band are around $10 \%$ and at 100 GHz only 3\%. The tendency towards reduced efficiency at high frequency can in some ways be counteracted by the construction of diodes with very thin stubstrates or with ring formations.

Two forecast curves based upon the above reasoning, labeled "CW 1985" and "Peak power 1985," are also shown in figure 9. They are shown up to a level of 150 GHz , where the drift region's thickness is around 0.2 2 . It is preferred that an abrupt pn junc- $/ 45$ tion shall be obtained with a much thinner layer, which is still expected to be possible through multiple ion implantation (several successive implantations with various acceleration voltages can eventually produce very large variations in concentration within $0.2 \mu$.$) This will likely bring about the construction of ATT os-$ cillators at 300 GHz with power output as high as 1 mW .

It is hard to judge which power levels will be reached by 1985 with the ARP or the TrAPATT mode. The estimated maximum power values shown in figure 10 , which assume that the power output will will be obtained at one-half the transit-time frequency, are probably much too optimistic. With regard to the published data, it seems more likeiy that a $50 \%$ efficiency will be reached at onethird to one-fourth of the transit-time frequency. Therefore, the given maximum power values are used at the given frequency to produce the forecast curves in figure 10 . This also produces a good compromise with the calculations in [25]. With a maximum transittime frequency of approximately 300 GHz , the maximum ARP frequency the becomes 75 to 100 GHz .

The previously mentioned $p^{+} p n^{+}$double diode $[26]$ is expected to be of special significance for the further development of the TRAPATI oscillator. In [30], the major advantages in being able to optimize the one diode section for normal ATT oscillator operations and the other for TRAPATT operations were shown. A normal ATT oscillation is of course necessary to start the TRAPATr oscil-: lator. The optimization is aimed at creating the highest possible negative conductance in the ATr diode with a certain current and at the same time keeping the necessary (transient) start-up current Low for the TRAPATT diode. This can not be done simultaneously in one diode. Preliminary measurements indicate 0.5 W CW power at 4.8 GHz with 12 \% efficiency.

According to this forecast, the ARP mode will allow higher CW output power than the transit-time mode at frequencies under 15 GHz . Between 1 and 10 GHz , the power is two to three times higher and efficiency is at all times approximately three times higher.

In terms of the maximum peak power, the ARP and the ATT modes $/ 46$ will yield approximately the same power level: several kW at 1 GHz and approximately 100 W in the X -band.

It should be observed that a large number of avalanche diodes can easily be produced on the same substrate [15]. Because of this, combined parallel and series couplings should be able to produce at least ten times higher power levels than discussed above for a diode with an unchanged level of impedance. Instead of circular diode structures, very small, oblong pn junctions can be of great significance because of their lower thermal resistance.

## Noise in the Avalanche Diode Oscillator

AM noise in an $x$-band diode is saturated within the 1 kHz bandwidth, at a distance of 10 kHz from the carrier wave, and typically around 100 to 110 dB under the signal power, in the best case, according to [18], at a value of 125 dB . The effective value $\Delta f_{\text {rms, }}$ used to characterize FM noise, has been shown (see for example [16]) to depend on the mid-frequency $f_{0}$, the outer $Q$ value, $Q_{e x}$, the bandwidth $B$ and the output power $P_{U T}$, according to the following formula:

$$
\Delta f_{\mathrm{rms}}=\frac{\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{O}}}{\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{ex}}}\left(\mathrm{kTB} / \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{UT}}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}},(\text { where } \mathrm{kTB} \text { indicates thermal noise). }
$$

The lowest value for $\Delta f_{\text {rms }}$ reached within the $X$-band with an output power of about 100 mW and $Q_{\text {ex }} \approx 150$ is on the order of 25 Hz , in which $\mathrm{B}=1 \mathrm{kHz}$ (standard value) [18]. One characteristic of the avalanche diode oscillator is that both the AM and the FM noise is constant with varying distance ( $f_{m}$ ) from the carrier frequency. In this way, the flicker noise in an oscillator of this type should be insignificant. Certain new measurements of commercially available oscillators indicate, however, in contradiction to this, some increase in FM noise and a large increase in AM noise near the carrier wave. For example, for 100 kHz to 10 kHz distance from the carrier wave, $F M$ noise increases 10 Hz and $A M$ noise 10 dB , according to [17]. On the other hand, new measurements by [18] dispute the results in $/ 47$ [16] for $f_{m}$ values less than 100 Hz . The divergent results must be due to diflerences in the diode's construction.

Despite the fact that the avalanche process will in principle generate noise, theoretical research shows that both AM and FM noise in an ATT oscillator should be able to be reduced to a level lower than what has been obtained to date. At the MOGA conference in 1970, it was reported [22] that an X-band ATT oscillator with a Schottky-barrier contact (and high Q-cavity?) produced $\Delta f_{r m s}=$ $2.5 \mathrm{~Hz} / \mathrm{kHz}$ at a distance of two to 10 kHz from the mid-trequency. This represents a 10 -time improvement over the best normal ATT diodes. Noise characteristics nearly as good as those in the Gunn diode are therefore expected in the future.

An increase in $P_{U T}$ to 1 W and in $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{ex}}$ to 1000 stould, therefore, lead to $\Delta$ Irms $_{\text {rms }}=3 \mathrm{~Hz}$, a value which is as low as the best Gunn diode oscillators. For obtaining the highest $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{UT}}$ and with that, the lowest $F M$ noise, special series-couplings of several diodes will be significant. Improvements in efficiency will also be important in this regard and in this way the TRAPATT mode can eventually lead to a lower noise level. Certain experimental results indicate, however, that noise is not invariably reduced with higher power output. In this manner, the lowest noise is not produced when the load is optimized for maximum power. However, the power reduction is not so large ( $<3 \mathrm{~dB}$ ) when the load is optimized for minimum noise [18].

## Electronic Tuning of the Avalanche Oscillator

Since the equivalent inductance in the avalanche region varies with direct current through the diode, the oscillation frequency can in principle be changed with the current. Frequency changes are normally on the order of 0.5 to $1 \mathrm{MHz} / \mathrm{mA}$. In the X -band, frequency changes of approximately 10 MHz can be easily obtained, but at the same time the power is greatly changed because the diode's negative resistance also varies with the cursent.

A more linear frequency tuning with nearly constant power output is obtained by coupling a varactor diode to the oscillator circuit. Coupling a more powerful varactor produces a larger electrical tuning area, but at the same time increases losses in the varactor which in turn reduces power output. Varactor-tuning of avalanche diode oscillators has so far been used very little, but an electronic tuning region of $10 \%$ should be reached without difficulty. The combined effect of several varactor diodes should in the future produce a tuning region of up to one octave (66\%),

## Power Amplification with the Avalanche Diode

The avalanche diode can be of great significance for amplification in frequency ranges above those in which the transistor can be used. A normal two-gate amplifier is obtained when the avalanche diode's negative resistance, which yields reflection amplification, is connected to a circulator. Both the usable frequency range and the power output level are assumed to be very close to earlier-presented conditions in the avalanche diode oscillator. According to actual measurements, the noise factor remains relatively high, around 30 to 40 dB in a silicon diode and around 10 dB lower in a germanium diode. (However, the noise factor is less significant in connection with large signal amplification.) An x-band amplifier with a diode and 15 dB amplification typically produces a bandwidth of several percent and a power output between 0.5 and 1 W .

Since the negative resistance in the avalanche diode is large within a relatively wide region around the avalanche resonance, (around $\triangle \mathrm{GHz}$ in the X -band), broadband methods will surely be developed which will lead to amplification with a $20 \%$ bandwidth or greater. Amplifiers with several diodes will produce octave bandwidth. Atiempts have already been made to combine the amplification from several diodes with circuits which are detuned in relation to each other. For example, three diodes, each with its own minature circulator, have produced 40 dB amplification, 200 MHz bandwidth and 30 mW power output in the X -band [19]. Three direct-coupled diodes in a periodic waveguide structure have produced 120 MHz 1 dB-bandwidth with approximately 15 dB amplification and 11 GHz [20].

Amplification with avalanche diodes which function in the ARP or the TRAPATT mode has also been reported [21I. A diode which oscillated at 10.4 GHz produced a saturation amplification of 12 dB and a peak power output of 6.5 W at 3.1 GHz with an efficiency of 25\%. The bandwidth was 3\%. The power output from such an amplifier is assumed to be close to the forecast curve in figure 10. It will be of special interest between 1 and 15 GHz , where it will probably produce more power output then the transistor and the ATT diode amplifier.

A special for of saturated ampification which is of great interest in connection with a number of diode oscillators is the fre-quency-locking of the oscillator which can be produced from a much weaker control signal. The necessary locking power is produced when the control frequency recedes from the oscillator frequency according to the following formula:

$$
\frac{f_{\text {osc }}-f_{\text {lock }}}{f_{\text {OSC }}}=\frac{1}{2 Q_{\text {ext }}}\left(\frac{\mathrm{P}_{\text {lock }}}{\mathrm{P}_{\text {osc }}}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}
$$

The locking power $P_{\text {lock }}$ typically lies 15 to 25 dB under the oscillator power Posc, when fosc - flock $\leq 1 \mathrm{MHz}$. Of relevant interest is the fact that if the locking oscillator has lower noise than the power oscillator, the noise level in the power oscillator will drop. A reduction in FM noise near the carrier frequency by a factor of 10 to 30 can easily be obtain with a phase-locking signal at a relatively high power-level. Frequency and phaselocking is discussed further in connection with the Gunn Diode.

## REFERENCE

1. Read, W.T.r "A proposed high-frequency, negative resistance /50 diode," Belı Systems Techno Journal, (March 1958).
2. Johnston, R.L., et al, "A silicon diode microwave oscillator," ibid., (February 1965).
3. Prager, Chang, Weisbrod, "High power, high efficiency silicon avalanche diodes at ultra-high frequencies," Proc. IEEE, p. 586, (April 1967).
4. Iglesias, Evans, "High-efficiency CW IMPATT operation," Proc. IEEE, p. 1610, (September 1968).
5. Johnston, R.L., et al, "High-efficiency oscillations in Ge avalanche diodes below the transit-time frequency," Proc. IEEE, p. 1611, (September 1968).
6. Evans, W.J., "Circuits for high-efficiency avalanche-diode oscillators " Trans. IEEE, MTY, p. 1060, (December 1969).
7. 
8. Hofflinger, B., "Fundamental aspects of ATT diodes with distributed multiplication, " Proc. high frequency generation and amplification, Cornell University, (1967).
9. Hofflinger, B., "Recent developments on avalanche diode oscillators," Microwave Journal, (March 1969).
10. De Loach, B.C., "Recent advances in solid state microwave generators," Microwave Journal, (March 1969).
11. See Electronics, p. 96, (April 1969).
12. Scharfetter, Gummel, "Large-signal analysis of a silicon Read diode oscillator," Trans. IEEE, ED, (January 1969).
13. Mouthaan, K., "Nonlinear analysis of the avalanche transittime oscillator," Trans. IEEE, ED, (November 1969).
14. De Loach, B.C., "Thin skin IMPATTs" Trans. IEEE, MTT, p.72-74, (January 1970).
15. Zettler, Cowley, "Batch fabrication of integral-heat-sink IMPATT diodes," Electronic Letters. (December 1969).
16. Josenhans, J., "Noise spectra of Read diode and Gunn oscillators, "/51 Proc. IEEE, p. 1478, (October 1966).
17. Varian-catalogue, High-Q IMPATT oscillators, (Apri1 1969).
18. Cowley, A.M. " "Design and application of silicon IMPATT diodes," Hewlett-Packard Journal, (May 1970), and (Julỳ 1970) p. 9, correction.
19. Schere, Barett, "A broadband multistage avalanche amplifier at $X$-band," ISSCC Digest, (1969).
20. Ivanek, Reddi, "X-band oscillator and amplifier experiments using avalanche diode periodic structures," ISSCC Digest, (1969).
21. Hofflinger, Snapp, Stark, "High-efficiency avalanche resonance pumped amplification," ISSCC Digest. (1969).
22. Goldwasser, Berenz, Lee, Dalman, "IMPATT and Gunn oscillator noise," MOGA 70, speech 12.5.
23. Clorfeine, A.S., "Power dissipation limits in solid-state oscillator diodes," Microwave Journal, p. 93, (March 1968).
24. Evans, Scharfetier, "Characterization ofavalanche diode TRAPATT oscillators," Trans IEEE,ED, p. 397, (May 1970).
25. Scharfetter, D.L., "Fower-frequency characteristics of the TRAPATT diode mode of high efficiency power generation in germanium and silicon avalanche diodes," Bell System Techn. Journal, p. 799, (May-June 1970).
26. Scharfetter, Evans, Johnston, "Double-drift-region ( ${ }^{+}{ }^{+}{ }^{\text {pnn }}{ }^{+}$) avalanche diode oscillators," (July 1970).
27. Seidel, Scharfetter, "High-power millimeter wave IMPATT oscillators with both hole and electron drift spaces made by ion implantation," Proc. IEEE, p. 1135-36, (July 1970).
28. Ying, Kramer, "X-band silicon TRAPATT diodes," Proc. IEEE, p. 1285-86, (August 1970).
29. Evans, Johnson, "Improved performance of CW silicon TRAPATT oscillators," Proc. IEEE, p. 845, (May 1970).
30. Evans, Seidel, Scharfetter, "A novel TRAPATY oscillator design," Proc. IEEE, p. 1294-95, (August 1970).

Instabilities in GaAs in connection with high electrical fields were first observed by J. B. Gunn in 1963 [1]. The possible existence of such instabilities, however, had been shown theoretically by Ridley, Watkins [2] and Hilsum [3] several years earlier.

The energy levels in GaAs are constructed in such a way that if an electron at room temperature is accelerated in a field larger than $3.5 \mathrm{kV} / \mathrm{cm}$, it will rise to a higher energy level in which its effective mass is 15 times greater than at the lower level. As the field strength increases up to approximately $10 \mathrm{kV} / \mathrm{cm}$, more electrons will rise to the higher level and become less mobile. At even higher field strength, the electron distribution approaches a state of equilibrium. The resultof this process is that the average speed of the electrons, and consequently the current through the semiconductor, is proportionate to the energy field from 0 to $3.5 \mathrm{kV} / \mathrm{cm}$, and remains relatively constant above that level. The diminishing current above the threshold field corresponds to a negative differertial resistance which can give way to oscillations. Several oscillation and amplification processes can arise depending upon the thickness $L$ of the semiconductor layer, the electron concentration $n_{o r}$ the applied voltage and the characteristics of the outer circuit. Four main groups can be identified:

1. If $10^{12}<n_{o} L^{2}<10^{13} \mathrm{~cm}^{-2}$, a powerful excess of electrons is usually built up in a thin semiconductor junction, in which $n \gg n_{0}$ in the collection region and $n<n_{o}$ in the adjacent depletion region. This rearrangement of the charges increases rapidly up to an equilibrium state and causes a powerful, localized increase in the energy field (called domain). If the outer circuit has a low q-value, the domain built-up around the cathode will travel throughout the semiconductor at a speed of $107 \mathrm{~cm} / \mathrm{s}$. When the domain is taken up by the anode, another is built-up at the cathode. This periodic flow, the frequency of which is determined by the thickness of the semiconductor, is called transit-time mode.
2. If $n_{0} L^{L}=10^{12} \mathrm{~cm}^{-2}$, and the variations in doping in the semiconductor are very small, only one group of excess electrons is created within a very thin layer. This concentration of charges is called the accumulation domain, as opposed to that in section 1 , which is called the dipolar domain. As in ?, a periodic transfer of current through the semiconductor determined by the transittime is created. Disturbances in the doping level can easily transform an accumulation domain into a dipolar domain.
3. If $n_{o l}<10^{12} \mathrm{~cm}^{-2}$, no domain is created. However, the negative dynamic resistance can be utilized for small signal amplification in a circulator-connected reflection amplifier. This is the so-called stable amplification mode.
4. Even if $n_{0} L \geq 10^{12} \mathrm{~cm}^{-2}$, domain building can be suppressed by various muthods, and one can then speak of a pure negative
resistance mode.
The transit-time mode mentioned in paragraph 1 can with the appropriate formation of resonance circuits be made to function both over and under the natural transit-time frequency. The following sub-groups can be delineated:

1a. If the resonance circuit is tuned to a frequency above the transit-time frequency and has a sufficiently high Q-value, the wandering domain will be discharged by the high-frequency field before it reaches the anode. With increased frequency, a larger portion of the semiconductor will be inactive, which leads to decreased frequency. However, up to a level of 1.4 times the transit-time frequency the decrease is insignificant. This method of operation is termed the abbreviated transit-time mode.

1b. When the resonance circuit is tuned to a frequency under the transit-time frequency, to as low as one-half its value, the domain will travel throughout the semiconductor junction. However, the initiation of the next domain will be delayed because the negative portion of the high-frequency period has lowered the diode voltage under a critical level. Not until the highfrequency voltage increases again can a new domain be created. This so-called delayed transit-time mode usually works with good efficienc.: down to 0.6 times the transit-time frequency.

1c. A Gunn diode with a built-up aipolar domain can exper-
ience, particularly at lower frequencies, negative resistance, which can easily cause undesirable oscillations in the voltagefeeding circuits. If these are not suppressed with appropriate measures, they can unfavorably affect the desired high-frequency. These vibrations at low frequencies are called the relaxation mode.

1d. The negative dynamic resistance in the dipolar domain can also be utilized in a circulator-coupled amplifier at frequencies high above the transit-time frequency. As opposed to amplifiers with sub-critically doped GaAs (paragraph 3), high values are achieved in the saturation level and the power output. This function can be called the wandering-domain amplifier mode.

The mode described in paragraph 4 which produces a negative resistance without the creation of either an accumulation domain or a wandering domain, can be divided into the following variations:

4a. The LSA mode (from limited space-charged accumulation) can be created with a sinusoidal signal if the ratio of the charge concentration to the frequency $n_{0} / f$ lies between $10^{4}$ and $2.10^{5} \mathrm{~cm}^{-3} \mathrm{~s}$ (with a square-wave signal, the upper limit is $10^{6} \mathrm{~cm}^{-3} \mathrm{~s}$ ). The resonance circuit in this case is tuned to a frequency high enough so that a domain does not have time to be
built during the positive portion of the high-fregrency period. However, the collection area which is building up at the cathode must have enough time to discharge completely through the dielectric relaxation process during the negative portion of the high-frequency period. The result of this is that the entire semiconductor functions as a negative resistor and can produce an oscillation frequency which is completely independent of the thickness of the semiconductor junction.

When $n_{O}{ }^{L}$ approaches $10^{13} \mathrm{~cm}^{-2}$ and $\mathrm{n} / \mathrm{f}$ approaches $10^{6} \mathrm{~cm}^{-3} \mathrm{~s}$, the accumulation does not have time to completely discharge and dipolar domains can occur, even though they do not become fully developed. This is called the hybrid mode and is used often to extract high power with a harmonic to the transit-time frequency.

4b. The creation of dipolar domains can be prevented through
frequency-selective loading of the high-frequency circuit. At the other frequencies, a negative resistance remains which can be utilized, for example, in a reflection amplifier. This is an amplifier node with a circuit-suppressed domain.

4c. Under certain conditions (L small and $n_{0}$ L relatively large), only a static domain is created in the region of the anode. This brings about a stable negative resistance, usable for amplification within a wide range of frequencies. This amplifier mode with static domain is probably closely related to that in paragraph 4 b and can eventually become identical to it.

4d. In another type of amplifiex or oscillator, the creation of the domain is suppressed by using the altered field distribution of a dielectric junction in contact with a thin, active GaAs junction. This is a mode with dielectrically-suppressed domain.
Power Limits of the Gunn Diode
The Transit-time Mode
A. Sasaki [5] has shown that the power output from a Gunn diode with wandering domain can be written, ignoring any thermal limitations, as:

$$
P=\left(\frac{\left(E_{B}-E_{S}\right) L_{H}}{\sqrt{2}}\right)^{2} \frac{1}{R_{L}}=\frac{\left(E_{B}-E_{S}\right)^{2}}{2 R_{L}} \frac{v_{d}^{2}}{f^{2}},
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{B}}=\text { the electric field from the applied direct voltage } \\
& \mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{S}}=\text { the lowest electric field in which a domain can exist } \\
& \nabla_{\mathrm{d}}=\text { the domain's drift speed } \\
& \mathrm{f}=\text { transit-time frequency } \\
& \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{L}}=\text { the load resistance. }
\end{aligned}
$$

With $E_{B}=25 \mathrm{kV} / \mathrm{cm}$ (approximately equal to the practical maximum value, which, however, does not produce maximum efficiency), then $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{S}}=1.5 \mathrm{kV} / \mathrm{cm}, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{d}}=10^{7} \mathrm{~cm} / \mathrm{s}$ and f in GHz , we obtain:

$$
P_{\max } R_{I_{1}}=\frac{28,000}{f_{G H z}^{2}} W
$$

If it is further assumed that $R_{L}=1$ ohm is the lowest useful load, $P_{\max }=28,000 / \mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{GHz}}$ is obtained.

Using more precise calculations in which efficiency is maximized, Copeland [6] has calculated the somewhat lower value

$$
\mathrm{PR}_{\mathrm{L}}=\frac{12,000}{\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{GHz}}^{2}} \text { Wת, which applies for } \eta=7 \% ;\left(\mathrm{PR}_{\mathrm{L}}, \dot{\eta}\right)
$$

For a Gunn diode functioning in the transit-time mode:

$$
n_{0} \mathrm{~L} \simeq 10^{12} \mathrm{~cm}^{-2}
$$

and

$$
\mathrm{f}=\frac{\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{d}}}{\mathrm{~L}}=\frac{10^{7}}{\mathrm{~L}_{\mathrm{cm}}} \mathrm{~Hz}
$$

The specific resistance can be written as:

$$
\rho=\frac{1}{e_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{O}}}}=\frac{10^{-5}}{\mathrm{e} \mu \mathrm{E}} \mathrm{~Hz} \Omega \mathrm{~cm}=\frac{10^{10}}{\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{Hz}}} \Omega \mathrm{~cm}
$$

where $\mu=$ the mobility, $\left(6000\right.$ to $8000 \mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{Vs}$.
If one assumes that the cross-sectional surface area in the Gunn diode is limited only because the dimensions must be small in comparison to the wavelength, the maximum surface can be written as:

$$
A_{\max }=\left(\frac{\lambda_{g}}{4}\right)^{2}=\left(\frac{\lambda_{O}}{4 \sqrt{\varepsilon}}\right)^{2}
$$

where $\lambda$ is the wavelength at which $\varepsilon=1$.
With $\varepsilon=10.8$ for GaAs, we have

$$
A_{\max }=\frac{5.2 \cdot 10^{8}}{\mathrm{~F}_{\mathrm{Hz}}^{2}} \mathrm{~cm}^{2}
$$

In this way, the low field-resistance becomes

$$
R_{O}=\rho \frac{L}{A_{\max }}=\frac{1}{52} \Omega \text {, independent of } \mathrm{E} \text {. }
$$

According to Copeland, maximum efficiency is achieved when the load $R_{L}=50 R_{O}=1 \Omega$, with $E_{B}=10 \mathrm{kV} / \mathrm{cm}$. For higher $\mathbb{E}_{B}$ values, ${ }^{R_{L}}$ must be increased, presumably to $100 \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{or}}$, with the earlier assumption of $E_{B}=25 \mathrm{kV} / \mathrm{cm}$, in which $R_{0}=2 \Omega$, independent of f . In this way, a value midway between the calculations of Sasaki and Copeland
can feasibly be set at

## ORIGINAL PAGE IS OF POOR QUATITY

$$
P_{\max }=\frac{14,000}{f_{\mathrm{GHz}}^{2}} \mathrm{~W} .
$$

This should apply to efficiencies somewhat under $10 \%$ and approximates the maximum power output in pulse operation. This relationship is shown in figure 11.

By using the conclusion of Knight [7], the maximum CW power from a Gunn diode can be calculated. For an epitaxial $\mathrm{n}^{++} \mathrm{nn}^{+}$ junction diode, with the $\mathrm{n}^{++}$junction (of thickness $\delta$ ) connected to an infinitely large heat sink, and with an active junction of thickness $L$ and radian $r$, the maximum temperature rise in the active junction will be

where $\quad T_{\mathrm{Vs}}=$ the heat-sink temperature $\simeq 300^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$,
Q = the applied power per unit of volume. This is nearly constant in the diode and given as $\mathrm{JE}=$ the current density times the field strength.
$\mathrm{K}_{\text {st }}=$ the thermal conductivity in the heat sink
$\frac{K_{1}}{T}=$ the thermal conductivity in the $n$ junction
$\frac{K_{2}}{T}=$ the thermal conductivity in the $n^{++}$junction.
This can be written as

$$
Q=J E=\left(v_{S} n_{0} e\right) E_{B}=\mu E_{s} n_{0} e E_{B}=\frac{E_{B} E_{B}}{p}=f_{H z} E_{s} E_{B} \cdot 10^{-10}=0,1 f_{G H z} E_{S} E_{B}
$$

With $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{B}}$ chosen to maximize the efficiency, according to Copeland, (or, $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{B}}=8000 \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{cm}$ and $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{S}}=2000 \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{cm}$ ), then $\mathrm{Q}=1.6 \cdot 10^{6} \mathbf{f}_{\mathrm{GHz}}$.

Since the efficiency in a Gunn diode decreases rapidly at temperatures over $200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, the highest allowable $\triangle T$ ㄹ 200 . To find a dimension variable to meet these requirements, we set $r=\alpha r_{\text {max }}$, where $\alpha \leq 1$. Since the power output is proportionate to $r^{2}$, the calculated power output becomes $\alpha^{2} P_{\text {max }}$.

A calculation using the following data yields the results shown in table 2: $\mathrm{K}_{\mathrm{st}}=3.88 \mathrm{~W} / \mathrm{cm}^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$ for copper, $16 \mathrm{~W} / \mathrm{cm}^{\circ} \mathrm{O}_{\mathrm{K}}$ for diamond; $\mathrm{K}_{1}=150 \mathrm{~W} / \mathrm{cm} ; \mathrm{K}_{2}=120 \mathrm{~W} / \mathrm{cm} ; \delta=4 \cdot 10^{-4} \mathrm{~cm}=4 \mu$; and $r_{\text {max }}=\lambda g / 8=1.15 / \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{GHz}}$.

In the previous calculations, consideration has not been given to the fact that efficiency (or negative resistance) over 100 GHz

Table 2. Calculated maximum power output for a Gunn diode.

| $\stackrel{\mathrm{E}}{\mathrm{GHz}}$ | ${ }^{\text {a }} \mathrm{Cu}$ | adiamond | $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{UT}}$ |  | max |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | $1.68 \cdot 10^{-3 / 3}$ | $6.72 \cdot 10^{-3}$ | 0.04 | 0.64 | $\Delta T=250^{\circ}$ |
| 5 | 0.132 | 0.528 | 10 | 160 |  |
| 10 | 0.316 | 1 | 14 | 140 |  |
| 30 | 1 | 1 | 15.5 | 15.5 |  |
| 100 | 1 | 1 | 1.4 | 1.4 |  |
| 300 | 1 | 1 | 0.15 | 0.15 |  |

These results are also shown in figure 11 , where the values for 1 GHz have been modified somewhat. The difficulty in producing CW operation at low frequencies can be lessened somewhat by operating in the delayed transit-time mode, in which the lowest frequency is approximately 0.6 times the transit-time frequency. In this manner, the power values in the table's first column should be valid down to 0.6 GHz .
can be expected to diminish through the effect of the finite relaxation time during the transfer of electrons between the two energy states. According to certain calculations, efficiency should be zero at 300 GHz , but this is still not regarded as completely proven.

It should be pointed out that if the diode's efficiency is calculated from table 2 , so that

$$
n=\frac{P_{U T}}{\text { applied power }}=\frac{P_{U T}}{Q L \pi r^{2}}
$$

a value somewhat over $20 \%$ results. This is still approximately twice as large as that used in the beginning assumptions in the expression for $\mathrm{P}_{\text {max }}$ This is due to Gifferent assumptions in the two calculations, differences in the geometry of the diodes, and the assumed field strength in the determination of $Q$. The $C W$ power curves in figure 11, calculated from table 2, must therefore be assumed to show maximum powers which are too high. A calculation of output power as 10 of the feeding power produces a value approximately one-half as large.

## The LSA Mode

Next to the transit-time mode, the LSA mode is the most promising, especially for the generation of high peak power. Since the thickness of the active junction san be increased independently of the frequency, both the input and the output power can be raised significantly. The thermal limitations in CW operation at

The calculated curves are valid for $\eta=20 \%$ in the LSA mode and $\eta=10 \%$ in the transit-time (Gunn) mode.
$=-$ Transit-time mode
$=-$ LSA mode

Maximum peak power LSA mode
Maximum CW power in the Gunn mode (upper curve: diamond heat sink, lower curve: copper heat sink, and LSA mode.

Figure 11. The continuous curves indicate CW operation. The broken curves indicate pulse operation. Curves labeled by year represent the best obtained results.
the centimeter wavelength entail that the power output can not be expected to be much larger than.that from a Gunn diode in the tran-sit-time mode. On the other hand, the LSA mode becomes very interesting for $C W$ operation within the millimeter wavelength because of the difficulties in producing the thin junction which a Gunn oscillator must have in this range.

The product of the power output and the load resistance for an

LSA didde can be written

$$
\mathrm{PR}_{\mathrm{L}}=\frac{\mathrm{V}_{\text {pow }}^{2}}{R_{\mathrm{L}}} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{I}}=\left(\frac{\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{B}}-\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{p}}}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{\lambda}{4}\right)^{2},
$$

where $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{p}}$ stands for the field strength at which the negative dif- /6I ferentidil mobility stops, in other words, the field strength for the maximum drift speed of the charges equal to the threshold field. Naturally, the high-frequency amplitude must be large enough for the total field strength during any particular time to be somewhat under Ep, so that the accumulated charges are spread. However, for this estimation the lowest energy field is $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{p}}=3.5 \mathrm{kV} / \mathrm{cm}$. In this expression, it is also assumed that the active junction's thickness is small in comparison to the wavelength, so that

$$
L_{\text {max }}=\frac{\lambda}{4}=\frac{\lambda_{0}}{\sqrt{10} 0_{8}}=\frac{2,2 \theta}{P_{G \pi z}} \mathrm{~cm}
$$

According to Copeland [8], the maximum efficiency is $18 \%$ when $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{B}}=25 \mathrm{kV} / \mathrm{cm}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{L}}=50 \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{O}}$, where

$$
R_{0}=\rho \frac{L}{A}=\text { the low-field resistance. }
$$

Therefore: $\mathrm{P}=\frac{\left(\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{B}}-\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{P}}\right)^{2} \mathrm{~L}_{\text {max }}{ }^{A}}{100}$.
Therefore, the diode's cross-sectional surface must be maximized for maximum power. A dimension can be made equal to $\lambda / 4$, but according to Copeland [9], the other dimension must not exceed $f_{G H z} \mathrm{~cm}$, if the variation in the high-frequency energy field is to be less than 10\%, the level necessary for maximum efficiency. In this way,

$$
A_{\mathrm{HIX}}=\frac{\lambda}{4} \frac{1}{\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{GHz}}}=\frac{2,28}{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{GHz}}^{2}} \mathrm{~cm}^{2}
$$

and

$$
p_{\max }=\frac{\left(E_{p}-E_{p}\right)^{2}}{100} \frac{2,28^{2}}{p r_{G H z}^{3}} W,
$$

where

$$
\rho=\frac{1}{e \psi n_{0}}
$$

and

$$
10^{4}<\frac{n_{0}}{x_{\mathrm{Hz}}}<2 \cdot 10^{5} \mathrm{~s} / \mathrm{cm}^{3}
$$

Assume that $n_{0} / f_{H z}=10^{5} \mathrm{a} / \mathrm{cm}^{3}$, and $\mu=8000 \mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{Vs}$. With the $/ 62$ values given above, we then have

$$
P_{\max }=\frac{3 \cdot 10^{6}}{\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{GHz}}^{2}} \mathrm{~W}
$$

which, therefore, indicates maximum peak power at approximately

18\% efficiency. In comparison to pulse operation in the transittime mode, the power output is 200 times larger. This relationship is shown in figure 11.

To estimate the maximum CW power in the LSA mode, Knight's conclusion is used again. To obtain sufficiently low $Q$ in this case, which is to say, to avoid excessive temperature rises, $\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{O}} / \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{Hz}}=$ $0.510^{3} \mathrm{~s} / \mathrm{cm}^{3}$ is chosen. According to Copeland, the values $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{b}}=25 \mathrm{kV} / \mathrm{cm}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{L}}=50 \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{O}}$ remain unchanged and still close to maximum efficiency. Observe that the power output in this case is reduced to half compared with the above. To maintain $\Delta T=200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, the LSA diode values $L^{=}=\alpha L_{\text {max }}$ and the equivalent radins $r=\beta r_{\text {max }}$ are chosen. In the following calculations, $2 r_{\text {max }}$ is assumed to equal the mid-value of the diode's Iength and width, so that $r_{\text {max }}=0.3 / \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{GHz}} \mathrm{cm}$. In this manner, the maximum CW power can be expressed:

$$
\begin{array}{ll} 
\\
P_{\text {max }} \approx 0,5 \alpha \beta^{2} \frac{3 \cdot 10^{6}}{f_{\text {GHz }}} W=\alpha \beta^{2} \frac{1,5 \cdot 10^{6}}{f_{G H z}^{2}} & \because \quad \text { ORIGINAL PAGE IS } \\
& \text { OF POOR QUALITY }
\end{array}
$$

The results of the calculations for a copper or diamond heat sink are summarized in table 3. The results are also shown in figure 11. Here again, the effects of the finite relaxation time on power output have been ignored. The maximum powers shown in the table have not been optimized with any great precision. The diode's thickness, the equivalent radius and $\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{O}} / \mathrm{E}_{5}$ can all vary. The latter value has been kept constant (equal to $10^{5} \mathrm{~s} / \mathrm{cm}^{3}$ ) and the diode thickness $L$ has be held approximately as thin as in the transittime mode so that the exponents in the expression for $\Delta T$ will not be too large. The equivalent diode radius has then been made as large as possible. The largest diameter is obtained at 5 to 10 GHz with a diamond heat sink, and is approximately 1.7 mm .

As figure 11 shows, the maximum power limits for CW operation in the LSA mode lie somewhat lower than those in the transit-time mode. This is due, among other things, to the extra limitation of the diode dimension which was introdued according to Copeland [9]. One advantage of the LSA mode whould be that the predicted efficiency levels are more than twice as large. However, the values of 8 and $18 \%$ involve pulse operation and in the experiments done to date, the levels of cW operation have been much lower. According to [19], the efficiency level is reduced rapidly with an increasing temperature gradient in the active junction and approaches zero at a temperature differential of approximately $70^{\circ}$. The assumption of a maximum temperature differential of around $200^{\circ}$ used in the above calculations would then be altogether too large. However, it is likely that the efficiency decreases along the temperature gradient can be counteracted more or less completely through an internal doping gradient. The active junction would then be "electrically homogeneous" with the temperature distribution obtained in CW operations. One condition which supports this speculation is that

| f GHz | ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{Cu}$ | «diamond | ${ }^{8} \mathrm{Cu}$ | ${ }^{8}$ diamond | Maximum |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  |  | atput <br> $P_{\text {diamond }}$ <br> W |
| 2 | 0.0044 | 0.0044 | 0.015 | 0.06 | 0.4 | 6 |
| 5 | 0.0044 | -0.005 | 0.14 | 0.57 | 5 | 95 |
| 10 | 0.0044 | -0.005 | 0.33 | 1 | 7 | 75 |
| 30 | 0.005 | 0.01 | 0.95 | 1 | 7.5 | 15 |
| 100 | $\sim 0.005$ | $\sim 0.01$ | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 |

Table 3. Calculated maximum power output for an LSA diode.
when the active junction is evenly heated, efficiency starts to approach zero around $350^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. A double-sided heat sink could also contribute to a lowering of the temperature differences in the active junction. Since the diode's $n^{+}$junction must be relatively thick against the upper heat sink, the upper will not be as effective ass the lower. Therefore, any large increases in allowable power loss will not result from a double-sided heat sink, but the temperature profile in the diode will become more even. The calculations of the maximum $C W$ power assuming temperature increases of around $200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ within the diode must still be judged as very optimistic.

It should also be emphasized that the power limits apply to an infinitely large heat sink, so that the "practical" maximum power will be significantly lower.

Also shown in figure 11 are the results obtain in the Gunn and LSA modes using years as the parameter.

The high peak power obtained to date in the LSA mode has invariably been generated with so-called compensated GaAs, which, from a thermal standpoint, is very unstable. This has meant that only very short pulses have been able to be generated at low frequencies of repetition. It is expected by 1985 that the thermal material problems in a pulsed LSA diode will have been solved through the production of thick, thermally stable epitaxial junctions. However, the heat dissipation in ciodes dimensioned for maximum peak power, in other words, with very thisk active junctions, is so poor that particularly high mean power is still not found. In a diode constructed for very high peak power, a utilization factor higher than $10^{-4}$ cannot be expected. According to the calculated curves, this value produces a mean power which is approximately 50 times less than the power from an optimized CW diode. A compromise between high peak power and mean power should, in the $x$-band, lead to several kilowatts of peak power and several watts of mean power.

## Efficiency and Forecast of Power Output in the Gunn Diode

The maximum power levels calculated above (according to Copeland) involve 10 officiency in the domain mode and approximately $20 \%$ in the LSA mode. These values are obtained with sine wave high-frequency voltage and the relation $r=2$ between. the maximum and minimum electron speeds. In a good material, larger values for $r$ can occur, and then the efficiency increases in proportion to (r - $11 /(r+1)$. Higher efficiency is also achieved by the appropriate turing of the harmonics, so that the form of the high-frequency voltage approaches a square wave.

A number of calculations indicate in this manner that efficiency levels of approximately $30 \%$ should be obtainable in both the cran-sit-time and the LSA modes. However, individual experimental results contradict these figures. The highest reported value with pulse operation in the L-band with a utilization factor of $10^{-4}$ is 32\% [10]. With increased utilization factors and higher temperatures, however, efficiency declines rapidly (see the foregoing discussion in connection with [19]). In CW operation, efficiency over $5 \%$ is seldo reached. If it is assumed that the efficiency in pulse operation is around $30 \%$ for both the transit-time and the LSA modes, the earlier calculated values for $P_{\text {max }}$ will increase by a factor of three in the transit-time mode and 1.5 in the LSA mode. If the efficiency level in CW operation is assumed to be $10 \%$, $\mathrm{P}_{\text {maxCW }}$ in figure 11 will, according to earlier discussions, be reduced by a factor of two in the transit-time mode and by at least as large a factor in the LSA mode. This yields approximately the same power level for both modes. These efficiency-modified curves are shown in figure 12, where the likely forecest curves for 1985 are also presented. In the latter, an excessively fast power reduction ( $\mathrm{P} \sim \mathrm{f}^{-3}$ ) has been indicated at frequencies over 100 GHz , but the size of this reduction is very uncertain. This also means that the maximum frequency which can be generated with an LSA diode at present cannot be predicted. It can be speculated that it will lie somewhat over 200 GHz . Diodes functioning in the transit-time mode can hardly be expected to produce at frequencies higher than 150 to 200 GHz , since the active junction would then have to be thinner than $1 \mu$ and, therefore, the substrate upon which the epitaxial junction is built would have to have a smoothness of better than 1000 A.

The forecast curves show the superiority of the LSA mode when compared to the transit-time mode in pulse operation. If GaAs of sufficient purity and homogeneity can be produced in the necessary dimensions, it can be assumed that LSA modes alone will be used for the generation of high peak power. The LSA mode will also dominate the area of CW power at frequencies over 50 GHz and, due to its presumably better noise characteristics, also at other frequencies. Observe that the curve indicating peak power applies at low utilization factors ( $\leq 10^{-4}$ ). If this factor is increased, thermal factos will cause the maximum peak power to decrease.

ORIGINAL PAGEIS
OF POOR QUAGARY


FIGURE 12.

## Noise Properties in the Gunn Diode Oscillator

The Gunn diode is characterized by very good noise properties, but as in the ATT diode, both AM and FM noise depend upon the outer Q-value ( $Q_{e x}$ ) of the resonance circuit. As opposed to the ATT diode, both AM and $F M$ noise decrease with increased frequency distance ( $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{m}}$ ) from the carrier wave. Noise reduction is usually on the order of 3 to 6 dB per octave with regard to $E_{m}$. Among the best noise data observed to date with X-band Gunn diodes functioning in the transittime mode (with $Q_{e x}=300$ ) are: AM noise 110 dB under the oscillating power at $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{m}}=1 \mathrm{kHz}$, and 125 dB at $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{m}}=10 \mathrm{kHz}$ with a test bandwidth of 1 kHz . FM noise, expressed in the effective value of the frequency deviation, is $\Delta \mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{rms}}=10 \mathrm{~Hz}$ at 1 kHz and $\Delta \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{rms}}=4 \mathrm{~Hz}$
at 10 kHz , still with a test bandwidth of 1 kHz . (If one wishes to express the FM noise as a power relation between the noise and the oscillator power, this can be calculated for noise in double sidebands according to $\left.N / P \doteq\left(\Delta f_{r m s}\right)^{2} / f_{m}^{2}\right)$ For comparison, noise data for a good reflex klystron is given here at $f_{m}=10 \mathrm{kHz}$ : AM noise, $-125 \mathrm{~dB} ; \Delta \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{rms}}=5$. In other words, the noise characteristics of the Gunn oscillator are definitely in the same class as good reflex klystrons.

If the Gunn oscillator is connected with an out stabilizing cavity with extremely high $Q$, for example, 35,000 , the $F M$ noise can be further reduced. Measured within $1 \mathrm{kHz}, \Delta \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{rms}}=1.5 \mathrm{~Hz}$ at $f_{m}=1 \mathrm{kHz}$, and $\Delta f_{\mathrm{rms}}=0.4 \mathrm{~Hz}$ at $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{m}}=10 \mathrm{kHz}$. The AM noise lies at -155 dB . An invar stabilizing cavity yields further advantages, reducing the temperature-induced frequency changes in the Gunn oscillator from the normal value of $-0.5 \mathrm{MHz} /{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to less than $-10 \mathrm{kHz} /{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. One disadvantage is naturally the unavoidable coupling-losses through the cavity, which normally reduce the power output 6 to 10 dB. But, this reduction in power can be compensated by allowing the high-stabilized signal to lock a high-power Gunn oscillator into a low Q-cavity, so that the noise characteristics are worsened: only insignificantly. The use of a non-transmitting cavity behind the diode can yield very low stabilizing losses.

Except for the resonance circuit, noise in the Gunn oscillator is naturally dependent on the characteristics of the semiconductor and the electronic process through it. A reduction in the diode's "intrinsic" noise is therefore very significant. The noise theories concerning various types of Gunn diodes are still far from complete, but it is believed that diodes with developed dipolar domains are the worst in terms of noise characteristics. The following mechanisms can be noise-generating:

1. Unevenness and irregularity in connection with domain building and growth.
2. Speed variation in the domain caused by variations in the load concentration in the semiconductor.
3. The occurence of electron deposits.

Through improved material technology, future improvements should be expected in all of these points, but a transition to diodes without dipolar domains will probably produce the best solution. Individual measurements indicate, for example, that a LSA oscillator has 10 dB lower AM noise than a Gunn oscillator with dipolar domains [11]. In terms of noise characteristics, then, future Gunn oscillators should be as good and eventually better than the best contemporary 2-cavity klystrons.

The frequency of the Gunn oscillator can be varied within a small range of less than $1 \%$ by altering the voltage, which alters the diode's domain-capacitance and negative resistance. The size of the frequency change depends much upon the outer circuit, but normally has a value of 1 to $10 \mathrm{MHz} / \mathrm{V}$. With larger changes, the output power will vary significantly, and then it is better to tune with the help of a varactor diode coupled to the resonance circuit. The tuning range with a normally-coupled varactor approaches $10 \%$. Attempts to utilize several coupled varactors indicate the possibility of achieving tuning in the octave range. However, tuning in the octave bandwidth usually occurs by means of a coupled YIG ball, in which the resonance frequency is varied in a magnetic field. The scanning frequency with YIG tuning is limited to several hundred Hz , but frequencies on the order of 10 MHz can be realized with varactor tuning. Since the varactor diode can also withstand higher power than the YIG ball, development will concentrate on the varactor-tuned oscillator.

## Frequency Locking in the Gunn Diode Oscillator

As with the avalanche diode oscillator, the conditions for frequency-locking can be described by the following equality:

$$
\frac{\left|f_{\text {osc }}-s_{\text {fock }}\right|_{\text {max }}}{f_{\text {osc }}}=\frac{1}{2 Q_{\text {ext }}} \sqrt{\frac{1_{\text {ook }}}{\underline{p}_{\text {osc }}}}
$$

$\mid f_{\text {osc }}-$ fiock $\left.^{\prime}\right|_{\text {max }}$ is the maximum frequency range within which the oscillator remains locked with a certain locking-power. This can easily be determined experimentally and is inversely proportional to Qext.

The phase angle between the oscillator and the lockingoscillator can be written as

ORIGINAL PAGE IS OF POOR QUALITIY

Or

$$
\Phi=\Phi_{0}+\arcsin \frac{\tilde{f}_{\mathrm{osc}}-f_{\text {logk }}}{f_{\text {ose }}} 2 Q_{\text {ext }} \sqrt{\frac{R_{\text {ose }}}{\mathcal{P}_{\text {lock }}}}
$$

Or

These expression show that all the changes of $\mathrm{f}_{\text {osc }}$ and Posc will produce a phase shift. Both fosc and Posc in a Gunn diode oscillator are now highly dependent upon the diode voltage $V_{B}$ and the temperature $T$. For an X-band oscillator with a low Q-cavity, $\Delta E_{\text {osc }} / \Delta T=-0.5 \mathrm{MHz} /{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ and $\Delta \mathrm{P}_{\text {osc }} / \Delta T=-0.05 \mathrm{~mW} /{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ (with $P_{\text {osc }}=15 \mathrm{~mW}$ ). If $V_{B}$ is held constant while the surrounding temperature varies, large phase shifts can result from temperature variations of only several degrees if Plock is small. According to the expression for $\Phi+\Delta \Phi$, a high $Q$-value can appear to be very undesirable. But a cavity with high $Q$, which experiences insignificant length extension, has the advantage that $\Delta f_{o s c} / \Delta T$ becomes much smaller than in a low Q-cavity. In this manner, changes in $Q$ cannot be expected to have a large effect on phase conditions, while the effect of temperature on the semiconductive material's characteristics will be the most deciding factor. Measurements and calculations of an X-band oscillator by H. R. Holliday [15], show, For instance, that when Posc/Plock $=20 \mathrm{~dB}, 4 \Phi= \pm 90^{\circ}$ at $\Delta T= \pm 5^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ or at $\Delta \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{B}}= \pm 0.4 \mathrm{~V}$. With an increase in Posc$/ \mathrm{P}_{\text {lock }}$ to $10 \mathrm{~dB}, \Delta \Phi$ diminishes to approximately $\pm 10^{\circ}$ with the same $\Delta \mathrm{T}^{\circ}$ and to $\pm 20^{\circ}$ with the same $\Delta \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{B}}$.

These Eigures point to difficult practical problems in using several phase-controlled Gunn diode oscillators in, for example, a series-parallel antenna. However, it can be assumed that continued research into materials will produce a more thermally-stable GaAs or a completely new semiconductor with more appropriate characteristics. (The above-discussed problems in phase shifting are generally applicable to negative resistance oscillators, but they /71 have been fully treated here in connection with the Gunn diode because of its high sensitivity to temperature.)

## Iife Span of the Gunn Diode Oscillator

Previously completed life span tests have yielded $10^{5}$ hours as an estimation for MTBF ("Minimum time before failure"). At the $90 \%$ level of confidence, MTBF is greater than $3 \cdot 10^{4}$ hours (the measurements are by Varian). Hopefully, the life span in the future will be increased at least by a factor of 100 , so that MTBF will be on the order of $10^{7}$ hours.

Future Variants of the Gunn Oscillator
The future prospects for the Gunn diode oscillator have been evaluated here using the GaAs semiconductor. This has to date produced better results than several other known mixed semiconductors which display the Gunn effect. Naturallyr it is not precluded that new semiconductor combinations can yield even better results, foremost in the area in increased efficiency and increased thermal stability. In this context, modification of the basic principle of the Gunn oscillator can be significant. For instance, Hilsum and Rees [16] have pointed out that a semiconductor
with three distinct electron energy levels, instead of the normal two, could produce improved efficiency together with better operations in the LSA mode.

Power Amplification with the Gunn Diode
As was already mentioned, a Gunn oscillator with wandering dipolar domains possesses a negative resistance at low frequencies and up to ten times the transit-time frequency [12]. An amplifier with high saturation power is then produced in a circulator coupling. Completed experiments show that this maximum output power lies somewhat over half of what the diode produces as an oscillator in the transit-time mode. The following is given as an example of the type of data which to date has been obtained From such an amplifier: $f_{0}=6 \mathrm{GHz}, \Delta f=2 \%, G=10 \mathrm{~dB}, \mathrm{P}_{\text {max }}=$ 60 mW , and the noise factor $F=20 \mathrm{~dB}$. Very large improvements in terms of output power and bandwidth must be seen as possible within the near future.

A combination of several circulators with separate diodes /72 should at least produce octave bandwidth, and amplification of very high frequencies can be possible. If, for example, the thickness of the active layer is reduced to $2 \mu$, the corresponding transit-time frequency to 50 GHz , and a charge density $\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{o}}$ is chosen around $5 \cdot 10^{16}$, so that the condition that $n_{0} L \gg 10^{12} \mathrm{~cm}^{2}$ is met, usable amplification should be obtained up toward 200 GHz . The noise factor will probably not be low in this amplifier.

The most attractive alternative is an amplifier with high $n_{0}$, which will make possible high amplification and output power, but with suppression of domain-building, so that the noise remains low. This could be realized in several ways:
(1) A frequency-selective load circuit is built to suppress domain-building. A stationary domain is possibly built at the anode [17].
(2) The active material is made at a right angle to the domain's direction cf travel, and it is made so thin that the domain cannot grow. Without making the semiconductor extremely thin, domain-building can also be suppressed if a dielectric disc with high $\epsilon$ is laid on the GaAs layer [13].
(3) By forcing a signal of sufficiently large amplitude and high frequency upon the active layer, the same negative resistance principle which is utilized in the LSA oscillator should be able to be used in a circulator-coupled power amplifier [14].

Amplifiers designed according to the principle in (1) should
be relatively difficult to realize, but newly published information, which is probably related to an amplifier of this type, shows that very good results can be obtained: a two-stage amplifier (two circulators and two diodes) yielded 10 dB amplification within the 4.5 to 8 GHz band with an output power of 0.2 W and a noise factor of 15 dB [18]. Several promising experiments have been done according to the principles in (2), while (3) has yet to be tested. According to the calculations, however, a 1 mm long diode being fed with 50 W should be able to produce 177 W at 10 GHz in pulse operation. A special advantage with (2) is that its planar structure can give /73 good possibilities to the effective cooling of the active semiconductor.

Irregardless of which principle of amplification is shown to be best, the above discussion shows that Gunn diodes will be significant for broadband power amplification at high Erequencies in addition to their use as oscillators. The output power levels should be on the same order of size as given for Gunn oscillators, and ...ultiple-octave bandwidths should be possible. This type of amplifier could therefore replace the travelling-wave tube at low power levels.

## REFERENCES

1. Gunn, J.B.r "Microwave oscillations of current in III-V semiconductors," Solid State Com. vol. 1r (September 1963).
2. Ridley, Watkins, "The possibility of negative resistance effects in semiconductorsp" Proc. Phys. Soc. (August 1961).
3. Hilsum, C., "Transferred electron amplifiers and oscillators," Froc. IEEE, (Fenruary 1962).
4. Copeland, J.A., "A new mode of operation of bulk negative resistance diodes," Proc. IEEE, (October 1966).
5. Sasaki, A., "Frequency dependencies of power and efficiency of transit-time oscillations in two-valley semiconductors," Proc. IEEE, p. 1757, (October 1968).
6. Copeland, J., "Theoretical study of a Gunn diode in a resonant circuit," Trans: IEEE, p. 55, (February 1967).
7. Knight, $S .$, Heat flow in $n^{++}-n-n^{+}$epitaxial GaAs bulk effect/74 devices," Proc. IEEE, p. 112, (January 1967).
8. Copeland, J., "LSA-oscillator-diode theory," JAP, p. 3096, (July 1967) .
9. Copeland, J., "Doping uniformity and geometry of LSA oscillator diodes," Trans. IEEE, ED, p. 497, (September 1967).
10. Berson, Enstrom, Reynolds, "Figh-power 4 - and S-band trans-ferred-electron oscillators, RCA Revue, p. 20, (March 1970).
11. Copeland, J.f "The LSA oscillator," Proc. of high frequency generation and amplification, Cornell University, (1967).
12. Thim, H., "Linear microwave amplification with Gunn oscillators," Trans. IEEE, ED, p. 517, (September 1967).
13. Kataoka, et. al., "Suppression of travelling high-fielddomain mode oscillations in GaAs by dielectric surface loading," Electr. Lett. p. 48, (February 1969).
14. Hashizume, kataoka, "Transferred-electron negatise-resistance amplifier," Electr. Lett. " P. 34, (January 1970).
15. Holliday, H.R., "The effect of operating parameters and oscillor.characteristics upon the phase angle between a locked X-band Gunn oscillator and its locking signal," Proc. IEEE, (July, 1970).

## REFERENCES

16. Hilsum, Rees, "Three-level escillator: A new form of transferred-electron device," Electr. Lett., p. 277, (April 1970).
17. Mircea, Magarshack, "Simulation sur ordinateur de la diode Gunn et du circuit associe," Colloque International sur la Microelectronique avancee", Paris, (April 1970).
18. Hardeman, L., "Progress in transferred-electron device circuits" (reference from the 1970 IEEE Convention), Microwaves, p. 16, (May 1970).
19. Christenson, Woodward, Eastman, "High peak-power LDS operation from epitaxial GaAs," Trans. IEEE, p. 732-38, (September 1970).

## The Electroacoustic Amplifier

In the electroacoustic or phonon amplifier, amplification is /75 achieved in principle in the same way as in a travelling-wave tube. If the atoms in the crystal grid of a piezoelectric semiconductor are made to vibrate in an appropriate manner, an acoustic wave will spread causing a wandering disturbance in the crystal's inner electric field. When the electrons in the semiconductor are accelerated by an external field to a speed higher than the abovementioned speed of the disturbance, they will transfer part of their kinetíc energy to the acoustic wave's energy field and, in that manner, amplify the acoustic vibrations. (The energy of the vibrations in a crystal can be described in the form of quanta, which are called phonons. In this way, the phonon amplifier gets its name.) 5 The speed at which the acoustic waves spread is approximately $10{ }^{5}$ times less than the speed of light, which means in part that the electrons do not need to be accelerated with so high a voltage to produce interaction, and in part that the wave length for microwave frequencies will be extremely small (for exampie, $1 \mu$ at 3 GHz ). This property means that the microwave-acoustic functions lend themselves well to great miniaturization and particularly to the time delay of electric signals.

A number of different types of waves can be utilized within microwave acoustics. In the earliest experiments, volume waves were used, but in the last years the use of surface waves has become more common. In both cases, the waves can be both longitudinal and transversal. The construction of an effective audioacoustic converter for exciting acoustic waves forms one of the major problems in this context. In the beginning, the concentrated, high-frequency energy field in the cavity was allowed to directly affect the (cooled) piezoelectric crystal, in which the acoustic waves were to be produced. Later, separate converters were produced through evaporation techniques on the surface of a side of the crystal. A $\lambda / 2$ thick layer of CdS placed between two metal films produced a fairly effective but narrow band converter at room temperature. Through the production of multiple layers (several layers $\lambda / 2$ thick consisting of various materials), the adaption of the acoustic wave to the main crystal was improved and, as a consequence, the conversion efficiency increased. Conversion losses as low as 4.5 dB at 800 MHz and 5 dB at $1,600 \mathrm{MHz}$ have been obtainev with a band width around 6\%. Since 1965, when White [1] constructed an effective, so-called Rayleigh electroacoustic converter for surface waves, most of the research in microwave acoustics has been aimed at the utilization of surface waves. The surface-wave connector consists of an interdigital structure with a distance of one-half wavelength between the centers of two adjacent fingers. The connection to the crystal increases with the number of fingers, but at the same time the bandwidth decreases. Naturally, the conversion efficiency is also dependent upon the constant of the piezoelectric coupling, and lithium
niobate is particularly good in this respect. A surface-wave interdigital converter has the disadvantage of exciting the elastic waves in two directions at right angles to the length of the fingers. The consequent loss of 3 dB can be eliminated two interdigital structures, whose centers are located an odd number of square wavelengths from each other, are fed with two signals, one of which is $180^{\circ}$ behind the other. Because of interference, the acoustic wave is excited in only one direction.

The width of and distance between the fingers of the interdigital pattern are produced with dimensions as small as $1 \mu$ using the conventional photoresist process. This corresponds to a maximum frequency of approximately 800 MHz . With an electron beam functioning in the electronresist process, structural widths of $0.3 \mu$, corresponding to a frequency of 2.5 GHz , have been produced [2]. This shoutd be the best obtained result to date. The coupling is made of lithium niobate (LiNbO ${ }_{3}$ ), and with an $8 \%$ bandwidth, the conversion losses in the converter are 10 dB (inclusive of the 3 dB directional loss).

The most important result of calculations of the function of both volume and surface-wave amplifiers is given in [3]. For volume wave amplification, the following is applicable:

The maximum amplification $\hat{G}=\frac{0.5 G_{0}}{f / \mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{D}}+\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{C}} / \mathrm{E}} \mathrm{dB}$
yields $\frac{v_{o}}{V_{a}}=\frac{f}{E_{D}}+\frac{f_{C}}{\tilde{F}}+1$, where $G_{O}=8.6 \pi K^{2} f_{c} \frac{L}{V_{a}} d B ;$
$K=$ the electromechancial coupling constant;
the dielectric relaxation frequency $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{C}}=\frac{1}{2 \pi \rho \varepsilon \varepsilon_{O}}=\frac{1800}{\rho \varepsilon} \mathrm{GHz}$, in which $\varepsilon$ is the relative dielectric constant and $\rho$ is the resistivity in ohm cm; in ohm chn ; tharges' diffusion frequency $f_{D}=63 \cdot 10^{-10} \frac{v_{a}^{2}}{\mathrm{H}} \mathrm{GHz}$, in which $\mu$ is the mobility in $\mathrm{cm}^{2} / \mathrm{Vs}$ and va is the acoustic wave's speed in $\mathrm{cm} / \mathrm{s}$;
$v_{0}=$ the electron speed $=\mu E_{0}$; $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{O}}=$ the field strength from the applied direct voltage; and $L=$ the length of the crystal.

If the above expression for the amplification is maximized with regard to frequency, the maximum value becomes:

$$
\hat{G}_{m}=\frac{G}{L_{H}} \sqrt{\frac{f_{D}}{I_{c}}} d B
$$

with $f_{m}=\left(f_{C_{D}}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ and the corresponding $\frac{v_{o}}{v_{a}}=1+\frac{2 f_{m}}{f_{D}}$.

According to [3], an investigation of what bandwidth the amplification mechanism in a volume-wave electroacoustic amplifier can produce shows that octave bandwidth or greater can be easily reached. In practice, this means that the electroacoustic converter will set the limit for the bandwidth; in other words, at present between 20 and $40 \%$.

The previous descriptions show that the power loss per unit /78 of volume from the applied direct current can be written as

$$
P_{v}=\frac{1}{p} E_{0}^{2}
$$

which with maximum amplification becomes

$$
P_{v}=2 \pi f_{c} \varepsilon \varepsilon_{0} E_{0}^{2}=2 \pi \frac{f_{\bar{m}}^{2}}{f_{D}} \varepsilon \varepsilon_{0} r^{2}
$$

With some typical values inserted, $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{O}}=2 \mathrm{kB} / \mathrm{cm}, \varepsilon=12$, this becomes

$$
\therefore p_{v} \propto 27{\overline{P_{c}}}_{c} / \operatorname{sm}^{3} .
$$

For Cds, for example, the power loss is around $10 \mathrm{~W} / \mathrm{mm}^{3}$, which produces difficulties in CW operations. This thermal problem can be solved by placing the crystal in a transverse magnetic field. With this the effective high-frequency mobility will diminish (while the corresponding value for direct current is unchanged), which leads to the changing of $f_{C}$ and $f_{D}$ to the effective values $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{C}}$ and $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{D}}$ so that $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{C}} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{D}}=\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{C}} \mathrm{ff}_{\mathrm{D}}$, in other words, unchanged frequency for maximum amplification, but

$$
f_{c}^{\prime}=\frac{f_{c}}{1+(\mu B)^{2}}
$$

In a semiconductor with high mobility, a powerful magnetic field can decrease $f_{c}$ and consequently $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{b}}$. (With $\mu=10^{4} \mathrm{~cm}{ }^{2} / \mathrm{Vs}$ and $B=10^{4}$ Gauss, $P_{b}$ is only cut in half.)

The maximum output, power with maximized amplification is

$$
P_{m} \alpha \frac{4 v^{3} \varepsilon_{0}\left(f_{m} / f_{p}\right)^{2}}{\mu_{k}^{2}} \text { Watt/ unit surface area. }
$$

Efficiency then becomes

If the highest possible efficiency is desired, the amplification $\hat{G}_{\mathrm{m}}$ must be held low and a crystal with a low electromechanical coupling constant, K , becomes feasible.

To illustrate the above relationship, the data obtained with a CdS volume amplifier for transverse waves with $\rho=550 \Omega \mathrm{~cm}$ will be used.

For CdS, $\mathrm{K}^{2}=0.04, \varepsilon=9, \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{a}}=1.8 \cdot 10^{5} \mathrm{~cm} / \mathrm{s}, \mu=300 \mathrm{~cm}^{2} / \mathrm{Vs}$ and $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{D}}=0.68 \mathrm{GHz}$. This yields $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{C}}=0.36 \mathrm{GHz}$ and $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{m}}=0.5 \mathrm{GHz}$. If the amplifier's length $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}=0.1 \mathrm{~cm}, \hat{\mathrm{G}}_{\mathrm{m}}=76 \mathrm{~dB}$. The ratio $\dot{v}_{\mathrm{o}} / \mathrm{va}_{\mathrm{a}}$ $\forall a$ becomes $\frac{4}{3} .5 \cdot 10^{5}$, which yields $E_{O}=1.5 \mathrm{kV} / \mathrm{cm}, \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{O}}=148 \mathrm{~V}$, $P_{v}=4 \mathrm{~W} / \mathrm{mm}^{3}$ and $n=0.7 \%$. If the crystal has a cross-sectional surface area of $1 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}, P_{\mathrm{m}}=24 \mathrm{~mW}$. Therefore, very high amplefiction is obtained with a short crystal. Amplification levels over 80 dB cannot be utilized, however, since the amplifier's internal noise reaches such a high lever at the output that saturation occurs.

No complete theory for calculating the function of a surfacewave amplifier has yet been published. According to [3], for a double-layer amplifier, in which an acoustic wave in $\mathrm{LiNbO}_{3}$ is amplified by the electrons in a very close silicon layer (on a sapphire plate), the following amplification equasion applies:

$$
\therefore \frac{G_{0}\left(\frac{v_{0}}{v_{a}}-1\right)}{\left(\frac{v_{0}}{v_{a}}-1\right)^{2}+c_{s}^{2}\left(1+\frac{f}{f_{a}}\right)^{2}} \text {. }
$$

where
ORIGINAL PAGE IS
OF POOR QUALITY

$$
G_{0}=8,68 \frac{d}{\rho v_{a}^{2} \varepsilon_{p}} \frac{\Delta v_{a}}{v_{a}} 2 \pi f I d B
$$

$$
C_{s}=\frac{\mathrm{a}}{\mathrm{pr} \varepsilon_{\mathrm{e}}} \text { (the space charge constant) }
$$

$$
f_{e}=\frac{v_{s}}{2 \pi h \varepsilon_{p}^{i}}\left(\varepsilon_{p}^{\prime}=50.2 \text { for } L i \mathrm{NbO}_{3}\right) \text {, }
$$

$d=$ the semiconductor junction's thickness,
$h=$ the distance between the $\mathrm{LiNbO}_{3}$ and si layers, $\frac{\Delta v_{a}}{v_{a}}=\underset{(=0.0246)}{ }$ an interaction parameter, dependent upon $K^{2}$

This formula, which applies when $f \ll E_{D}$ and $d$ and $h$ are small in comparison to the Rayleigh wave length, shows that the amplification will diminish rapidly if $f>f_{a}$ (and $c_{s}$ is large). Since $h$ can hardly be made smaller than 200 A , with $\mathrm{f}_{\text {ama }}=$ $0.6 \mathrm{GHz}, \mathrm{b}_{\mathrm{a}}=3.5 .105 \mathrm{~cm} / \mathrm{s}$. This entails difficulties in reaching high amplification at frequencies over 1 GHz . The amplification around 0.3 GHz is approximately $10 \mathrm{~dB} / \mathrm{cm}$ at $\mathrm{h}=1,580 \mathrm{~A}$ and $60 \mathrm{~dB} / \mathrm{cm}$
at $h=560 \mathrm{~A}$. The surface-wave amplifier's band width,
saturation power and efficiency are about as large as with a volume amplifier when the converters are not taken into account. Açain, without considering the effect of the interdigital converter, the surface-wave amplifier's band width is comparable to the volume amplifier's. As already mentioned, the converter's band width depends upon the conversion losses, so that an increased number of fingers diminishes both the losses and the band width. Judging from results obtained to date, a surface-wave amplifier obtains at most twice as large a band width as a volume amplifier at the same frequency and with the same conversion losses. The biggest advantage with the surface-wave amplifier is that power loss can easily be avoided and, in this manner, it yields itself to CW operations. Efficiency levels over $10 \%$ have been obtained experimentally with low surface-wave amplification of approximately 10 dB .

An evaluation of the electroacoustic amplifiers usefulness and especially its future significance is relatively complicated. Since the electroacoustic amplifier covers about the same frequency range as trarsistor amplifiers, it must be mainly compared with them. The most characteristic properties of the electroacoustic amplifier are its simple construction and small dimensions. It functions approximately the same as a multi-stage transistor amplifier containing a minimum of 50 circuit elements [4]. This means that the electroacoustic amplifier, especially those of the surface-wave type, could at low frequencies compete very strongly as an alternative to the transistor amplifier, despite the fact that through mass-production and the use of concentrated integrated circuits it can be both small and inexpensive. However, with the need for high CW power and efficiency, coupled with low-level amplification within a very wide band, the transistor amplifier should remain dominant even at very high frequencies (larger than 3 GHz ).

There is, however, a special area in which the electroacoustic amplifier is and will continue to be very significant. This is in connection with acoustical delay lines for high-frequency signals. The previously discussed characteristics of a piezoelectric material are such that a 1 cm long crystal delays a high-frequency signal as much as a 100 m long coaxial cable; in other words, approximately $1 \mu s$. At 1 GHz , the dampirg in such a cable is about 20 dB , while the damping in the crystal is only 1 dB , to which the conversion loss of 10 to 20 dB must then be added. In such a delay line, consisting of a piezoelectric crystal and an electroacoustic converter, there are already several of the main elements of an electroacoustic amplifier. In this way, they lend themselves to easy integration in the structure. The amplifier easily compensates both damping in the converter and in the crystal. Especially in connection with large delay (high crystal damping), the internal amplifier can be of great value since it reduces the dynamic range of the delay lines insignificantly, while compen-
sation by an external amplifier diminishes the dynamic range by the value of the crystal dampiny. Furthermore, a very important function of the internal amplifier is to reduce the influence of reflection in the converter. It has been shown in a passive delay line to be difficult to maintain the signal, which is first reflected at the output point and then at the input point, 20 dB lower than the primary output signal. With acoustic amplification, the electron speed can be reduced so that the reverse damping becomes much larger than the amplification, so that the twice-reflected signal is at least 40 dB lower than the primary signal.

It is believed that the surface-wave type of electroacoustic /82 amplifier will be most significant in the future because of its large flexibility in terms of input and output coupling of signals and because of suitable manufacturing methods, which create good possibilities for its adaption to other integrated circuits produced with planar processing. The highest possible frequency limit for this type of amplifier depends partly on the size of the converter's interdigital structure, and partly on the possibility of creating an effective coupling between the (probably necessary) separate layers for electroacoustic and electron conductants. The best conceivable method for producing very fine structures, pattern-definition using an electron beam in the electronresist process, has already been mentioned [2]. The method is described more completely in [5], where it is pointed out that the electron beam should have a diameter which is 4 to 5 times less than the smallest dimension in the structure being produced. Since an electron beam can be focused to a diameter approaching 25A, this should mean that the production of fingers with a width of 125 A will be possible. However, other problems, such as resistance inhomogeneity, making the utilization of this solution impossible. Therefore, if one assumes that the width (and distance) of the smallest possible finger will be 500A. it will be possible to excite a Rayleigh wave-length of $0.2 \mu$, which corresponds to a frequency of 17 GHz . According to earlier discussions, the surface-wave amplifier with separate crystals for electroacoustic and electron conductants can hardiy function over 1 GHz due to poor interaction through the necessary air space between the crystals. A way to overcome this frequency limitation is suggested in [6]. The appropriate conductivity is given to a thin surface layer on the piezoelectric crystal using ion implantation. Maximum effectiveness is then achieved in the coupling without damping the acoustic wave by any large bodies in the conducting crystal (or its substrate). If ion implantation is carried out in several adjacent square surfaces instead of one continuous rectangular surface, the electrons can be accelerated to the appropriate speed with significantly less voltage. Voltage is fed to the square areas in parallel and the acoustic wave can be said to be amplified in several stages. An added advantage is that power loss would be reduced.

Through the development of the technological methods outlined here, it seems feasible that the frequency range of the surface-wave type of electroacoustic amplifier will be expanded further upward to the X-band around the year 1985. The amplifiers will be mainly used in connection with acoustic delay lines and have up to 408 bandwidth and 70 dB amplification. For separate amplification functions, except for extreme miniaturization at relatively low frequencies, the transistor will maintain its advantage over the electroacoustic amplifier. The relatively high conversion losses and low efficiency in the electroacoustic amplifier mean that the transistor can produce both a lower noise factor and higher output power.

1. White, Voltmer, "Direct piezoelectric coupling to surface elastic waves," Appl. Phys. Lett., p. 314-16, (December 1965).
2. Lean, Broers, "S-band surface acoustic delay lines;" ISSCC, (1970).
3. Kino, Reeder, "Microwave acoustic amplifiers," Microwave Journal, P. 79-85, (March 1970).
4. Dobriner, R., "Electroacoustic amplifiers about to leave lab?" Electr. Design, p. 17-18, (April 1966).
5. Lean, Broers, "Microwave surface acoustic delay lines," Microwave Journal, p. 97-101, (March 1970).
6. Yoder, M. M., "Systems exploitation of the multifunctional properties of praetersonics technology, ${ }^{\text {Electronics Components Conference, p. } 455-469 \text {, (1970, }}$.

## Other Semiconductor Oscillators

## The Tunnel Diode Oscillator

The interesting possibility of electronically utilizing the /0, guantum-mechanical tumnel. effect was aiscovered in 1958 by Leo Esaki [1]. His experiment showed that a semieoneuctor diode with very high doping (concentration of impuritios) in both the $p$ and n layer, displayed a negative dynamie resistance within a smoll area of forward bias. The high hevel of doping in sueh a digde $\left(10^{19}\right.$ to $10^{30}$ doped atoms per $\mathrm{cm}^{3}$, as opposed to $10^{16}$ to 10 in a normal diode), means that the overlay is extremely thin, on the order 100 A. since it is possible for the electrons to penetrate (tunnel) through such a thin potential bariser without having sufficient energy to climb over it, the appearance of the tunnel diodes $I-V$ characteristic can be easily explained. Figure 13 shows schematically the energy levels and the size of the currents in a tumel diode with varied bias. In figure 13-A, there is zero bias, and since the electron density is as latge in the valence bands on the p-side as in the conduction hands on the corresponding level of the n-side, two small, equally large tumeling currents flow in opposite directions across the abrupt junction. the net current is therefore zero. with reverse bias (Figure 13-B), the tumelling current from the n-side remains unchanged, while the curcent from the p-side increases greatly, since the number of empty energy levels which can receive elactrons from the p-side increases rapidy with negative voltage. The rosult is then that reverse curcent increases rapidly with raverse bias. With increasing forward bias, an increasing number of electrons will tumel from the n-shit to the ompty levols in the valence bands on the p-side, until a maximum current is ohtained at the energy level shown in Figure $11-\mathrm{C}$. It the bias is increased still further, tho tunneling current, hacking empty energy levels on the p-side, will decreaso to noaly zero, as shown in figure 13-D. At the same time, however, nomal ditfusion current will begin to flow, sine the dectrons on the n-side have sufficient the mal energy to climb over the putential barrier. Figure $13-\mathrm{F}$ shows the $\mathrm{I}-\mathrm{V}$ ehatacteristic which is ohtained throwh the process disctssed above, and the lotters a-d correspond to the br current contigurations in Figures 13 A - A . Figure $13-\mathrm{F}$ also shows some of the $I-V$ curves most characteristic points: poak tumelline current $I_{p}$, valley ourtent $l_{v}$, and the correspoming voltages ${ }^{p}$ and $V_{v}$. The negative dynamie resistame which the tunnel diode exhibits between $V_{p}$ and $V_{V}$ can naturally he utilized for construeting oseillators and retlection amplitiots, and sithe the negative resistanet is practically indegendent of the transittime phenomenon, one should expect it to be used at extremely high froguencies. The upper frequeney boundary will, however, be dependent upen the junction rapocitance cij, which bypusses the negative resistance $\mathrm{Bj}_{\mathrm{j}}$ (absolate value), and (he unavidable series resistanco $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{s}}$ in the somiconductor. The Lotal serios
resistance is then zero at the resistive cutoff frequency $f_{r}$, which is easily calculated as

$$
f_{r}=\frac{\left(R_{j} / R_{s}-1\right)^{\frac{1 / 2}{2}}}{2 \pi R_{j} C_{j}}
$$

Above $f_{r}$, the diodes total resistance is positive and no oscillations can occur.


1) Line electrons
2) Fermi level
3) Forbidden region
4) Valence electrons
c.


FIGURE 13A-E

An enclosed diode is also characterized by its self-resonant frequency $f_{s}$, at which the lead resistance $L_{S}$ resonates with the capacjtive junction. The equivalent circuit for the tunnel diode is shown in Figure 14 , in whish the diffusion capacitance $C_{s}$ is drawr with a broken line sinc it is usually practical to include it in the external circuit. , hen $C_{S}$ is ignored, the series reconant frequency becomes

$$
f_{s}=\frac{\sqrt{\left(R_{j}^{2} C_{j} / L_{g}\right)-1}}{2 \pi R_{j} C_{j}}
$$

The maximum output power from a tunnel diode oscillator can, according to [2], be estimated from the expression

$$
P_{\text {max }}=\frac{3}{16}\left(I_{p}-I_{v}\right)\left(v_{Y}-v_{p}\right)=0.2 I_{p}\left(v_{Y}-v_{p}\right),
$$

which is a good approximation for frequencies up to $0.3 \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{r}}$; in other words, up to frequencies where the diode's parasitic elements $C_{j}$ and $R_{s}$ havelittle effect. To obtain the highest possible output power, $I_{p}$ and $V_{v}-V_{p}$ must be increased. However, with reference to the discussion in connection with Figure 13, the conclusion can be drawn that $V_{V}-V_{p}$ must be significantly less than the semiconductor's bandgap, which for Ge, Gasb, Si and GaAs is respectively $0.67,0.68,1.1$ and 1.4 V . The only way to produce a larger increase in power is then to increase Ip.

According to [2], the
 current density with peak current is

$$
J_{p} \sim \frac{\sqrt{n}}{e^{\frac{c n}{n} s t}:}
$$

where $n=$ the number of doping atoms per $\mathrm{cm}^{3}$.

If the junction's crosssectional surface is $A$, then
FIGURE 14

$$
I_{p}=J_{p} A \sim \frac{\mathrm{~A} \sqrt{n}}{\frac{\operatorname{const}}{\sqrt{n}}}
$$

In this manner, $I_{p}$ can be increased with $A$ and $n$, but ${ }^{e}$ the way in which this will effect the diode's other properties must be investigated. Changes in $R_{j}$ and $C_{j}$, which can influence $f_{r}$, are of special interest. It can be written that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& R_{j} \sim \frac{1}{I_{p}} \sim \frac{\frac{\text { 首觡t }}{\sqrt{n}}}{A \sqrt{n}} ; \\
& c_{j}=A \sqrt{\frac{\text { egn }}{2\left(\phi_{c}-V_{j}\right)}},
\end{aligned}
$$

ORIGINAL PAGE IS OF POOR QUALITY
where $\phi_{c}=$ the contact potential, and $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{j}}=$ the forward bias.
In this way, $R_{j} C_{j} \sim e^{\frac{\text { Conat }}{\sqrt{I I}}}$ and is independent of $A . R_{j} / R_{S}$, which is also found in the expression for the resistive cutolf frequency, will decrease slowly as $A$ increases (both $R_{j}$ and $R_{s}$ decrease). $f_{r}$ decreases slowly with increasing $A$, but increases with increasing $n$ (when $R_{j} \gg R_{s}$ ). Therefore, if high power at high frequency
is desired, A can be increased somewhat, but the doping should be increased first. However, increases in 11 (or A) cannot be too large since both $R_{j}, R_{S}$, and their difference will be very small and then the external load resistance must also be made extremely small, and this is particularly difficult at high frequencies. According to [3], the highest obtainable load is proportionate to $\sqrt{£}$.

It is pointed out in [2] that it is very difficult to build a high-frequency oscillator for frequencies above the diode's self-resonant frequency. This means that the way in which the changes in $A$ and $n$ discussed above can influence $f_{S}$ should be investigated. It is then found that $f_{S}$ decreases as $A$ and $n$ increase, and that this can only be counteracted by reducing $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{s}}$.
$P_{\text {max }}$ given earlier as the maximum output power from a tunnel diode oscillator, applies as indicated only at frequencies under $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{r}}$, the frequency at which oscillations cease and therefore output power approaches zero. The way in which output power decreases with frequency with regard to the effects of $C_{j}$ and $\mathbb{R}_{s}$ can be calculated easily. If the power given by the load resistance $R_{L}$ is expressed as $P_{L}$, then


According to [2] and [4], the effective negative resistance which produces $P_{\max }$ is

$$
\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{D}}=2 \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{j}}
$$

Since $R_{D}$ is bypassed by $C_{j}$, the real negative series resi'stance will b

$$
\frac{\text { be } \frac{R_{D}}{1+u^{2} c_{j}^{2} R_{D}^{2}}}{}
$$

and with stable oscillations, it must have the same size as the loss resistance; in other words,

$$
R_{L}+R_{S}=R_{D} /\left(1+w^{2} C_{j}^{2} R_{D}^{2}\right)
$$

For osciallation at frequency $w_{r}$, it is necessary that

$$
R_{S}=\frac{R_{D}}{1+w^{2} C^{2} R^{2}}
$$

These expressions for $R_{L}$ and $R_{S}$ yield

From this it is concluded that the output power is very close to the maximum level at frequencies far below $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{r}}$, but decreases rapidly near $f_{r}$.

According to the calculations in [5], the efficiency for a tunnel diode oscillator with an optimized working point and load is close to $30 \%$ (excluding the losses in the stabilizing resistance).

To summarize, the tunnel diode oscillator's output power increases with the diode surface $A_{;}$, and the doping $n$. Increasing the surface, however, results in a lower cutoff frequency and increasing the doping quickly leads to the need for a very low load resistance. At the same time, the inductance in the diode's leads must be reduced for practical reasons when $A$ and $n$ increase. when the oscillation frequency nears the cutoff frequency $f_{r}$, output power decreases rapidly.

The best results obtained to date, according to [3], are shown in Table 4.

Table 4. Results reached with $T D$ oscillators.

|  | Power |  |  | original page is OF POOR QUALITY |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Frequency GHz | Output $\mathrm{m} W$ | Efficiency <br> \% | Material |  |
| 5 | 9 | - | p-GaAs |  |
| 10 | 2 | 2 | p-GaAs |  |
| 50 | 0.2 | - | n-GaAs |  |

The results given here are from 1964, and since then no improvements have been observed, probably because the research is completely directed toward other types of diode oscillators. Continued development of the tunnel diode will probably produce certain improvements using very highly-doped GaAs. The quantitative results of such development is hard to forecast, but 10 to 20 mW in the $X$-band and several tenths mW at 100 GHz could possibly be generated. However, the most important result of this appraisal is that the tunnel diode, like the power oscillator, will not be in a position to compete with other diode oscillators. Using series combinations of several highly-doped tunnel diodes, the impedance level can be raised, and this would, of course, increase the output power at high frequencies, as long as the increased series inductance does not create any problems. Both series and series-parallel combinations of tunnel diodes have already been tested [6].

It should be mentioned that among the tunnel diode oscillator's other characteristics is thermal instability. This is due to the fact that the junction capacitance varies with temperature. Aside from direct temperature stabilization, this can be counteracted by weakly coupling the diode to a frequency-determined highQ circuit. This, however, partially decouples the available negative resistance, which reduces its utility at very high frequencies. In this way, a stability of $-1 \mathrm{MHz} /{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ is normally
obtained in a 1 mW , s-band oscillator. Information on the noise characteristics of the tunnel diode oscillator does not exist at present, but the FM noise for a X-band oscillator with output power of 0.1 mW is given in [7] as 3 Hz measured within 1 kHz and 70 kHz distance from the cariier wave. The FM noise is, therefore, somewhat lower than in a good Gunn oscillator.

## REFERENCES

1. Esaki, L., "A new phenomenon in narrow germanium p-n /91 junctions," Phys. Rev. vol 109, p. 603, (1958).
2. Sterzer, F., "Tunnel diode devices," Advances in Microwaves, Academic Press, p. 1-41, (1967).
3. De Loach, B., "Recent advances in solid state microwave generators," Advances in Microwaves, Academic Press, p. 67, (1967).
4. Chow, W. F., Principles of tunnel diode circuits, John Wiley and Sons, Inc, p. 170, (1964).
5. Degen, W., et. al. "Berechnung der Schwingungsamplitude und der Leistung eines Tunneldiodenoszillators" AEU, p. 569575, (September 1964).
6. Thomson, G.W., "Microwave oscillators using series and seriesparallel combinations of tunnel-diodes," Proc. IEEE, p. 535, (May 1965).
7. International Microwave Corp. " "Diode oscillators feature low noise," Electronics, p. 180, (November 1966).

In 1962, B. D. Josephson did a theoretical examination of the tunnelling effect in a superconductor [1] and showed the possibility of developing several new technically useful phenomenon. The quantum mechanical background to these phenomena is very complicated, but they result in the so-called Josephson junction producing in part a finite direct current without the application of direct-current voltage and in part in an alternating current with the application of direct-current voltage, $V_{0}$, the frequency of which is determined by the equality

$$
f=\frac{2 e V_{c}}{h}=483,5 \mathrm{MRz} / \mu V_{5}
$$

where $e=$ the electron charge
and
h - Planck's constant.

In principle, the Josephson junction consists of two very thin superconductive metal surfaces, separated by an extrenely thin isolating layer (approximately 10A), which often takes the form of an oxide on one of the metal surfaces. The electrodes can be made, for example, from the metals $\mathrm{Pb}, \mathrm{Sn}, \mathrm{Nb}$, or an alloy such as pb-Bi. The pair of electrons, so-called Cooper pairs, which produce the superconductivity, will break apart at a certain voltage, whose value depends upon the characteristics of the metals and temperature. This voltage determines, according to [2], the upper cutoff frequency for the Josephson oscillator, and yields as a maximum value for $\mathrm{Sn}, \mathrm{Pb}$ and $\mathrm{Pb}-\mathrm{Bi} 350,650$ and $1,000 \mathrm{GHz}$, respectively. An experimental investigation [3] with Nb shows, however, that a voltage ten times greater than that which will separate the Cooper pair will still yield oscillations at a frequency which is, therefore, more than ten time greater than the maximum frequencies given in [2], in this case around $8,000 \mathrm{GHz}$. Aside from the fundamental tone, the Josephson junction is also an effective harmonic generator due to its non-linear $I-V$ characteristic. Despite the fact that the oscillation frequency is in principle continually variable with voltage, output power is usually observed at certain discrete voltage (and frequency) levels, which is connection wi ${ }^{\text {b }}$ he junction itself creating a resonance circuit. As a result of the low voltage values ( $20 \mathrm{\mu V}$ for the X band and approximately 2 mV for 100 GHz ), the output power from the Josephson oscillator must be very low. The feeding current, which normally lies around 10 or more mA, should certainly be able to be increased in order to increase the power, but the adaption to the external load would then be even more difficult to realize. It is estimated, for example, in [2] that the output power, because of poor adaption, will decrease by a factor of $10^{-4}$ in a "normal" Josephson junction, which is $250 \mu$ wide and 10 A thick. (The junction then is regarded as a band lead which radiates out in the free space.) The power radiated at 10 GHz is estimated at

5•10-12 N . By reducing the junction's width to $2.5 \mu$, the impedance in the band lead would increase 100 times to approximately 1 ohm. If it is assumed that this impedance could be transformed in a loss-free manner to antenna impedance, and that the current could remain constant by, for example, increasing the length of the junction, the output could then be increased to $5 \cdot 10^{-12} \mathrm{~W}$, or negative 63 dBm . These approximations show that the ortput power from a Josephson junction is very low. This type of oscillator is still of very great interest since it is the only solid-state device which can generate sub-millimeter waves. The low power means that its most interesting application will be as a local oscillator for mm and sub-mm waves (up to $10,000 \mathrm{GHz}$ ), at which point the Josephson junction would function simultaneously as a mixer.

1. Josephson, B. D. "Possible new effects in superconductive tunneling," Phys. Letters., p. 251-253, (July 1962).
2. Langenberg, Scalapino, Taylor, "Josephson-type superconducting tunnel-junctions as generators of microwave and submillimeter wave radiation," Proc. IEEE, p. 560, (April 1966).
3. McDonald, D. G., et. al., "Harmonic generation and submillimeter mixing with the Josephson effect," Appl. Phys. Lett., p. 121, (August 1969).

Since it was discovered around the year 1964 that indium antimonide under certain conditions could emit microwave radiation, very extensive work, on both the experimental and the theoretical plane, has gone on without producing any results of practical value. An explanation to the phenomenon (or phenomena) is naturally of great interest to the field of physics, but since a definite explanation is still lacking, it can be judged as very unlikely that microwave generation using inSb will produce any advantages in comparison to other generation methods and semiconductor devices. In the interest of completeness, however, a very short summary of the experiments done and the results obtained to date is given, based on [1], which itself includes 93 references.

When an electric field is applied to $n$ or p-type cooled $N i S b$, low-power electromagnetic radiation is emitted. Most of the experiments have been done at $77^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$, but investigations at temperatures from 2.4 to $250^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$ have been recorded. Radiation occurs with electric fields as low as several volts/cm, at which point the output power is on the order of $10^{-9} \mathrm{~W}$. With an electric field of $100 \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{cm}$ or greater, the output power increases to around $10^{-6} \mathrm{~W}$.

The measured frequencies range from several MHz , at which point they appear as an oscillation in the voltage-feeding circuit, and within the microwave range up to approximately 100 GHz , appearing in the form of directly emitted microwave energy. The radiation is emitted in the form of a wide spectrum, usually extending across all of the frequency range mentioned, with an energy distribution which is approximately inversely proportionate to the frequency. Some form of resonance which would lead to a relatively narrow-band spectrum is thought to have been detected in only a few experiments. It should be noted in this context that the methods used to date for the output-coupling of microwave energy have probably been highly ineffective. It is possible that a better understanding of the generation mechanism can lead to the construction of much better output-couplings, but in spite of this, the level of output power will probably remain low in comparison to other solid-state generators. In a number of experiments, the $/ 95$ indium aniimonide is also subjected to an external magnetic field, at right angles or parallel to the electric field. The direction and size of the magnetic field changes the level of output power and the threshold level (at which point oscillation begin) of the electric field. However, this will probably not be of fundamental significance to the generation mechanism.

Among the theories which have been proposed to explain the emission of electromagnetic radiation from Insb, the following are thought at present to be the most likely: interaction between the charges and acoustic waves (phonons) can produce amplification of thermal noise. The mechanism which then out-couples the high-
frequency energy is at present unclear. In connection with high (local) electric fields leading to the creation of electron holes, initiated instabilities can be ampiified by collisions of -charge waves in the electron-hole plasma. Continued research will probably reveal that several more processes are of significance in explaining all of the experimental results within this complex area.

Comprehensive Forecast for Power Generating Solid-State Devices
The earlier deduced forecast curves for the various solidstate devices, in which output power is given as a function of frequency, have been combined in Figure 15. In terms of CW power, the transistor will dominate up to several Gfz. In ranges Erom 2 to 20 GHz , the TRAPATT-mode avalanche diode oscillator will be the best alternative when both high power and efficiency is needed. The Gunn or LSA, and the ATT diode oscillator will be very significant within ranges 20 to 200 GHz , even if the frequency multiplier yields about the same power level. The total efficiency of a power oscillator followed by a multiplier is still much lower than that of a diode oscillator. Furthermore, when the multiplier's greater complexity and cost is considered, it becomes clear that it cannot compete with the diode oscillator. In connection with frequency and phase locking of diode oscillators, frequency multipliers for low output power and a high multiplication factor at every varactor stage can be of continuing significance. It is conceivable that the tunnel diode oscillator will be usable /96 in special circumstances demanding low-power consummation. Lastly, the Josephson oscillator creates the possibility to cover the submillimeter range, but only with very low output power (approximately $\left.10^{-10} \mathrm{~W}\right)$.

| Frequency <br> GHz | Maximum <br> CW <br> power <br> $W$ | EfEiciency <br> $\%$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.1 | 1000 | $50-70$ |
| 1 | 100 | $50-70$ |
| 10 | 30 | 50 |
| 100 | 1 | 10 |
| 200 | 0.1 | 1 |
| 300 | 0.01 | 0.1 |
| 1000 | $10^{-10}$ | - |
| 10000 |  |  |

Figure 5. CW powers from solid state devices 1985.

In terms of pulse operation, approximately the same power level for both the Gunn. ATT, and TRAPATT diodes can be expected, with the latter having the advantage with the highest efficiency. The highest level of output power is obtained from the LSA diode, but only in connection with very short pulses and a low utilization factor.

The maximum CW powers to be expected in 1985 are sumnarized in Table 5, in which approximations of the
appropriate efficiency levels are also shown.

FIGURE 15


The Josephson
oscillator
$10^{4} \mathrm{GHz}, \quad 10^{-10} \mathrm{~W}$

ORIGINAL PAGE IS OF POOR QUALITY

## RETERENCES

1. Glicksman, M., "Summary of microwave emission from InSb: Gross features and possible explanations," IBM Journal Res. Develop. : p. 626, (September, 1969).

## Small Signal Amplification

## The Low Noise Transistor

The highest possible power amplification and lowest noise /98 factor are sought in a small signal amplifier. The methods to maximize the amplification have already been discussed in connection with the power transistor. Ignoring the parasitic reactances, the noise factor for a high-frequency transistor's upper frequency range can be written according to Fukui [1] as:

$$
F=1+\frac{{ }^{2} \mathrm{~b}}{\mathrm{Rg}}+\frac{\mathrm{kP}}{2 \mathrm{eI} I_{c} \mathrm{Rg}}+\frac{e I_{c}\left(r_{b}+R g\right)^{2}}{2 k N R g}\left(\frac{f^{\prime}}{I_{T}}\right)^{2},
$$

where $\quad r_{b}=$ the base's diffusion resistance. $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{g}}=$ the source resistance, $\frac{\mathrm{kT}}{\mathrm{II}_{\mathrm{C}}}=\frac{\text { the differential emitter resistance }}{\alpha_{0}}$, $\alpha_{0}=$ the low frequency value of the current amplification with a common-base coupling,
$k=$ Boltzmann's constant, $T=$ the absolute temperature, $\mathrm{e}=$ the ej.ectron charge,
and $\quad I_{C}=$ the collector direct current.
In the second term, $r_{b}$ corresponds to the addition of purely thermal noise from the base resistance. The third term represents the fluctuation noise in the current at the emitterbase and collector-base junctions (equivalent to a thermal noise, according to Van der Ziel). The last term represents a currentdistribution noise with pure distribution-noise characteristics. It is normally attributed to the collector [2].

When $\mathrm{f}>0.5 \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}$, the minimum value of the noise factor, still according to Fukui [1], can be approximated as:

For an experimental-type microwave transistor, $\mathrm{L} 78 \mathrm{~B}_{8} \mathrm{~F}=199$ 6 dB at 3 GHz , when $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}=2.5 \mathrm{GHz}$. This yields $\mathrm{h}=0.8\left(\frac{\mathrm{~F}}{\mathrm{~F}}\right)^{2}$. If it is assumed for estimation that $r_{b}$ can be reduced so that the factor of 0.8 is lowered to 0.5 by 1985, and the maximum value of $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}$ is then 15 GHz , the lowest possible F-value can be calculated as a function of the frequency. (For other low-noise transistors in 1969, the factor is often between 1 and 2.) In particular, the transition from Si to other semiconductors with higher mobility will decreass $\mathfrak{r}_{\mathrm{b}}$ and increase $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{T}}$. The improvements between


FIGURE 16

1962 and 1969 in the transistor's noise factor is shown in Figure 16 as a function of frequency. The lowest possible noise factor for 1985, calculated according to the previous assumptions, is drawn as a broken curve marked "1985 without parasitic reactances."

It is clear from [1] that parasitic reactance at present will be significant in the S-band, where it will increase $F$ approximately 1 dB (several $d B$ in the upper s-band). With future improvements in mounting (combined with integrated circuits) it can be assumed that the parasitic reactance wiIl increase $F$ by approximately 0.5 dB in the s -band and approximately 2 dB in the X -band. These corrections are taken into account in the forecast curve marked " 1985 with parasitic reactances."

With $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{T}}=15 \mathrm{GHz}$, as assumed above, the low-noise transistor amplifier with regard to the feasible amplification per stage can be expected to be useful up to frequencies between 15 and 20 GHz . This evaluation is most applicable to normal bipolar transistors. However, it can be of interest to note how refined manufacturing techniques have recently led to the development of field-effect transistors with Schottky-contact modulation at very high $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{max}}$. One such transistor, made from GaAs, is reported in [6] to have $\mathrm{E}_{\text {max }}=30 \mathrm{GHz}$ and 3 dB amplification at 17 GHz .

In [7], $f_{\text {max }}$ values of 40 to 60 GHz are reported. This should make it possible to built an amplifier up to 30 GHz . The noise factor over 4 GHz is at present somewhat lower in a fieldeffect transistor than in a bipolar transistor. (According to undocumented information, in 1971, a helium-cooled field-effect transistor exhibited a noise factor 1.5 dB at 2 GHz .) The noise factor results given in [7] are shown in Figure 16. The curve is for a so-called MOSFET of silicon, while the best single value, 5 dB at 8 GHz , was probably obtained with GaAs. If the fieldeffect transistor is improved by 1985 about as much as the bipolar transistor, the doited curve shown in Figure 15 will result. This shows that the field-effect transistor can be very significant at frequencies over 10 GHz .

In a transistor amplifier, the output level at 1 dB gain compression is typically around +10 dBm , and the corresponding dynamic range (calculated within 1 MHz ) is typically 90 dB .

Integrated-types of low-noise amplifiers already exist which produce up to 50 dB amplification within a range of 0.1 to 2 GHz with a maximum output power of several mW and a noise factor around 6.5 dB . An amplifier for the 1 to 4 GHz range with 30 dB amplification and a noise factor 8 to 10 dB is also commercially available. The outer dimensions of these amplifiers are less than $10 \times 5 \times 5 \mathrm{~cm}$. The broad-band techniques utilized here probably cannot be improved too much more, but will be utilized more often at ever-higher frequencies as the transistors are improved. This /10i will make possible around 1985 the building of a compact unit consisting of 4 or 5 integrated amplifiers, which will cover the frequency range from 0.1 to 20 GHz and have significantly less volume than a normal travelling-wave tube.

## REFERENCES

1. Fukui, H., "The noise performance of microwave transistors," TIE ${ }^{3}$ ED, p. 329. (March 1966).
2. Nielsen, E. G., "Behavior of noise figure in junction transistors," PIRE, p. 957, (July 1957).
3. Small, T., "UHF and microwave devices, present-future," TI report, (1965).
4. Kotyczka, Strutt, "Noise measurements of si planar microwave transistors in the f. ヨquency range $4-8 \mathrm{GHz}$," Electronics Letters, p. 478-79, (July 1970).
5. "Fundamental transistor oscillator invades X -band," Microwaves, p. 74, (December 1969).
6. Drangeid, et. $\bar{a} 1 .$, "High-speed GaAs, SB field-effect transistors," Electronic Letters, p. 228, (April 1970).
7. Davis, R. T., "Front end designs, assaulting old noise barriers," Microwaves, p. 32, (April 1971).

Parametric Amplifiers
The principles of the so-callec parametric amplifier, in- / 102 stabilities in non-linear energy-inhibiting systems, have been known for about 100 years. In 1936, Hartley described a device with a mechanically variable capacitance which was very close to a parametric amplifier. The first experiments with parametrictype oscillators and amplifiers were done at the end of the 1940's. In these, the non-linear element was a coil with a ferrous center. In 1948, Van der ziel [1] described the mixing qualities of nonlinear capacitance and also pointed out the possibility of lownoise amplification. The first parametric microwave amplifier, constructed in 1957, utilizied a ferrite as the non-linear reactance $[1,3]$, but a year later, the first experiments were done with a semiconductor diode as the active element [4]. The subsequent development concentrated completed on utilizing semiconductor diodes in which the capacitance varies with the applied voltage, so-called varactor diodes.

The function of the parametric amplifier depends upon bringing a high-frequency, so-called pumping power to the varactor diode at a pumping frequency $f_{3}$, which is larger than the signal frequency $\mathrm{f}_{1}$. The varactor's non-linear reactance then produces the mixing frequencies $\mathrm{f}_{3} \pm \mathrm{f}_{1}$. If the varactor is coupled to two resonance circuits, one for $\mathrm{f}_{1}$ and one for the so-called no-load frequency $\mathrm{f}_{2}=\mathrm{f}_{3}-\mathrm{f}_{1}$, high-frequency energy will be transferred from the pumping source and result in a negative resistance in both the signal and the no-load circuits. In a normal parametric amplifier, both the signal source and the load are coupled over a circulator to the signal circuit while the no-load circuit usually has no load. The amplified signal can also be coupled out to a load connected to the no-load circuit. In this case, the amplifier is called a lower side-band tranducer. In both these cases, the amplification with varying load can be increased to very high values and convert to oscillation. In a third type of amplifier, the signal is coupled out through an upper side-band circuit, $f_{3}+$ $\mathrm{E}_{1}$. This is called an upper side-band converter and can have maximum amplification of $\left(E_{3}+\mathrm{F}_{1}\right) / \mathrm{E}_{1}$. Despite is unquestionable stability and low internal noise, it has not been utilized as a / 103 low-noise amplifier for two reasons: the amplification is usually too low, and the following mixer exhibits worsened properties because it must work at a higher frequency than the signal. The meaning of high amplification, $G_{1}$, and the effect of the noise factors of the low-noise amplifier, $\mathrm{F}_{1}$, and its following stages, $\mathrm{F}_{2}$, are given in the following expression for the total noise factor:


The latest development of the parametric amplifier has been completely dominated by the circulator-coupled type, in which the amplified signal has the same frequency as the feeding signal. An amplification $G_{1}=20 \mathrm{~dB}$ is easily obtained while maintaining good stability. It is possible to use this amplifier without a circulator. In this case, separate input and output couplings to the signal circuit are used, but because very large amplification variations result from very small changes in the signal source's impedance, the stability becomes very bad. For that reason, this report will concentrate completely on the circulator-coupled type.

A simplified equivalent circuit for this is shown in Figure 17-A, in which BPF stands for band-pass filter for the given frequency. The varactor is shown without parasitic elements (these can be thought to be included in the outer circuits) and is characterized by the average capacitance $C_{D}=1 / S_{D}$ produced with applied pumping power, and a change in capacitance of the amplitude $2 \mathrm{C}_{1}=1 / 2 \mathrm{~S}_{1}$ with the pumping frequency. The varactor's series resistance is $\mathbb{R}_{S}$ and its dynamic characteristics are usually characterized by the cut-off frequency $f_{c}=1 / 2 \pi R_{s} C_{o}$ (where $Q=1$ ) and $2 S_{1} / S_{0}$ (or, alternatively, $\left.2 C_{1} / C_{0}\right)$, or by the product $Q_{n}=\left(S_{1} /\right.$ $\left.2 S_{o}\right)\left(f_{c} / \mathcal{E}_{n}\right)=m\left(f_{c} / f_{n}\right)=m / \omega_{n} C R_{S}$, in which $m$ is, therefore, the modulation ratio.

A calculation of the varactor's equivalent impedance at frequency $\mathrm{f}_{1}$ shows that it corresponds to the series resistance $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{S}}$ and an impedance of

$$
=\frac{\left(m f_{C} R_{B}\right)^{2}}{\mathrm{P}_{1} f_{2}\left(R_{B}+R_{L / 2}+R_{2}-j X_{2}\right)}
$$

which with the resonance $X_{2}=0$, becomes a purely negative resistance. The signal circuit's equivalent circuit is shown in Figure 17-B in which all thermal-noise generators are also drawn. (However, the circuit losses, represented by $\mathrm{R}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{2}$, are assumed to be so small that their noise factor can be ignored.) In Figure 17-B, $V_{V}$ represents the noise which is transformed from the noload circuit by via the varactor into the signal circuit. $\mathrm{T}_{0}$ is the standard temperature in the generator-resistance (2900K), Td is the varactor temperature and $T_{2}$ is the load temperature in the no-load circuit.

With the help of figure $17-\mathrm{B}$, the reflection amplication can be written

$$
G\left|\frac{R_{G}-\left(R_{s}+R_{1}+j X_{1}-\frac{L_{m}}{\omega_{1} \omega_{2} C_{o}^{2}\left(R_{N_{2}}-j X_{2}\right)}\right)}{R_{G}+\left(R_{G}+R_{1}+j X_{1}-\frac{m^{2}}{\omega_{1} \omega_{2} c_{o}^{2}\left(R_{T_{2}}-j x_{2}\right)}\right)}\right|^{2}
$$

With resonarce and high amplification, $X_{1}=X_{2}=0$, and:

The noise factor $F=1+\frac{T_{e}}{T_{o}}$ is calculated from:

$$
\mathrm{F}=\frac{\text { Total noise in the output }}{\text { G(Thermal noise in the input) }}=\frac{\mathbb{N}_{\mathrm{UT}}}{\mathrm{GKT}_{\mathrm{O}} \mathrm{~B}}
$$

From Figure 17, with high amplification ard when $\mathrm{T}_{2}=\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{d}}$ : /105

$$
\underset{\sim}{F}+\frac{T_{a}}{T_{0}}\left(\frac{B_{G}}{R_{G}}+\frac{\omega_{1}}{\omega_{2}} \frac{R_{T_{1}}}{B_{G}}\right) .
$$



FIGURE 17A


In $[5,6]$, a noise figure $M$ is defined as

$$
\dot{M}=\frac{F-1}{1-\frac{1}{G}}
$$

which is shown to be independent of the amplification:


The lowest noise figure then yields
so that



This expression shows that the lowest noise figure is obtained in two ways: by choosing a cutoff frequency wo much larger than the signal frequency $\omega_{1}$, and by cooling the varactor and the possible load in the no-load circuit. Also, the noise figure's minimum value is obtained by choosing $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{E} 2}=0$.

It is naturally very advantageous to ointin low noise without cooling, and in this way it is meaningful to utilize varactors with high cutoff frequencies. In [7], the absolute upper limit for $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{c}}$ is estimated at $10^{4}$ to $10^{5} \mathrm{GHz}$, and [8] reports that GaAs varactors with $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{c}}>2000 \mathrm{GHz}$ have been developed. (It should be observed here that $f_{C}$ is calculated from an impedance measurement at relatively low frequency, normally in the $X$-band. Surface effects, however, cause the varactor losses to increase significantly at very high frequencies and lead to the corresponding reduction in $f_{c}$. This problem can possibly be solved by coáing the varactor surface with gold up to the active pn junctif. .) If one assumes that $f_{C}=3000 \mathrm{GHz}$ is an obtainable value and if one sets $m=0.33$, the following results are obtained for an $X-$ band amplifier: $\mathrm{E}_{2} / \mathrm{f}_{1}=100$ and $\mathrm{MM}_{\min }=0.02$, or, that $\mathrm{F}=1.02$ 0.1 dB or $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{e}}=60 \mathrm{~K}$. However, this would require a pumping $f r e-$ quency of $101 \mathrm{f}_{1}=1010 \mathrm{GHz}$, and the no-load circuit at 1000 GHz can hardly be separated from the pumping circuit. These figures show that the minimum noise factor cannot possibly be reached in practice. With $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{C}}=300 \mathrm{GHz}$, we obtain $\mathrm{f}_{2} / \mathrm{f}_{1} \simeq 9$ and $\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{min}}=0.2$; in other words, $F=1.2=0.8 \mathrm{~dB}$ or $\mathbb{T}_{e}=600 \mathrm{~K}$. These requirements are fully realizable. These breakdown calculations show that a /107 noise factor of 1 dB should be oreained with an X-band amplifier at room temperature. At 1 GHz , the minimum noise factor is several tenths of a decibel. In this case circulation damping is assumed to zero, whereas it will normally increase the noise factor by oni $y$ about 0.2 dB .

To obtain extremely low internal noise in a parametric amplifier it is usually most appropriate to cool the varactor diode. The expression for the noise figure $M$ shows that it is proportionate to the diode temperature Td, naturally under the condition that $m$ and $f_{c}$ do not change with the temperature. This last requirement is hardly fulfilled in all varactors, but highly doped diodes, especially of GaAs, have been developed which function without deterioration at temperatures as low as $4^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$. At the low noise temperatures which are obtained in this manner, several phenomena are now exhibited which in the uncooled amplifier were without meaning. In the cooled state, however, they are very significant. If, for example, the varactor is pumped so that a direct current $I_{0}$ is produced, [6] shows that the noise temperature will increase a minimum of
(when $f_{1}=4 \mathrm{GHz}, 3^{\circ} \mathrm{K} / \mu \mathrm{A}$ is a typical value for GaAs and $25^{\circ} \mathrm{K} / \mathrm{HA}$ is typical for si).

The heating of the varactor's active junction due to absorbed pumping power is also very significant for the noise temperature. This is discussed at length in [6] and the most important consequences are that:

1. The optimal frequency ration $\mathrm{f}_{2} / \mathrm{f}_{1}$ for minimum noise will be much lower than in an uncooled amplifier. The value is dependent on the varactor's heating, $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{C}}$ and m , but will lie between 2 and 5.
2. An effective heat sink in the varactor diode will be very significant in obtaining minimum noise.
3. An optimized, cooled load in the no-load circuit can reduce the noise up to $20 \%$ in comparison to an unloaded circuit.

The low noise in the cooled parametric amplifier also causes damping in the circulator and the leads to have a much greater effect on the total noise, especially if the damped parts are at room temperature. If the damping factor is $\mathrm{LI}_{\mathrm{I}}$, and the temperature of the leads (including the circulator) is $\mathrm{t}_{1}$, the damping factor at the output is $L 2$, and the noise temperature in the following stage is $T e 2$, then the system noise temperature will be

$$
T_{e}=\left(L_{1}-1\right) T_{1}+L_{1} T_{e 1}+\frac{L_{1}\left(L_{2}-1\right) \mathbb{R}_{1}+L_{1} L_{2} T_{e 2}}{G_{1}},
$$

where $T_{e l}$ and $T_{l}$ are the noise.temperature and the amplification
in the parametric amplifier. In connection with a helium-cooled amplifier, the circulator should definitely be cooled as well. If, for example, $T e 2=40^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$, $\mathrm{Ll}=\mathrm{L}_{2}=0.3 \mathrm{~dB}$, and $\mathrm{G}_{\mathrm{I}}=20 \mathrm{~dB}$, the result is that $\mathbb{T}_{e}=4^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$. If the circulator were maintained at room temperature, however, $T_{e}$ would rise to approximateliy $25^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$. In comnection with a Iiquid nitrogen cooled amplifier, the worsening is not so large if the circulator is not cooled. This is due to the fact that the losses in a cooled circulator are normally larger than in one at room temperature. If $\mathrm{I}_{1}=0.3 \mathrm{~dB}$ in a cooled circulator, $\mathrm{Ll}=0.1 \mathrm{~dB}$ can be obtained in a circulator at room temperature. This results in about the same Te.

In addition to the noise factor, the bandwidth of the parametric amplifier is also very significant in its utilization. A calculation of the amplification-bandwidth product, $\sqrt{\mathrm{G}} \mathrm{B}$, using the above expression for the amplification, gives the bandwidth for a single-tuned circuit with a varactor without parasitic elements. When $\mathrm{m}=0.33$ and $\omega_{c} / \omega_{1}=30$, such a calculation yields a maximum bandwidth of $10 \%$ at $G=20 \mathrm{~dB}$, and nearly $30 \%$ at $G=10 \mathrm{~dB}$. If $m$ is increased to 0.5 and $\omega_{c} / \omega_{1}$ to 60 , the maximum bandwidth will be approximately $14 \%$ at $G=20 \mathrm{~dB}$ and approximately $40 \%$ at $G=10 \mathrm{~dB}$. This requires that the ratio $\omega_{\mathrm{C}} / \omega_{1}$ is 0.7 and 0.5 , respectively, times the value which produces the lowest noise. In other words, a certain deterioration in the noise factor must /109 be accepted in order to obtain the largest bandwidth. These calculations indicate that bandwidths of approximately $30 \%$ should be obtained, in every case throurh the cascade-coupling of several stages with relatively low amplification at each stage.

A more complete calculation of the bandwidth, taking into account the varactor's parasitic elements and the necessary bandpass filters, has been done in [9] and several typical numerical results are shown in [6]. From these it is taken that the maximum bandwidth will diminish rapidly above the varactor's series-resonance frequency, which at present in a diode capsule is around 10 GHz . With a single-tuned signal circuit and $\mathrm{G}=20 \mathrm{~dB}$, the bandwidth is approximately $1 \%$ in the $X$-band and $3 \%$ in the s-band. Multiple tuning of the signal circuit can at most increase these values to $15 \%$ and $25 \%$, respectively. However, by constructing a balanced varactor-pair with multiple-tuning, maximum values of 20 : in the $X$-hand and $40 \%$ in the $S$-band can be reached. (The two adjacent varactors in this type of amplifier create a series-resonance circuit for the no-load frequency and work in parallel at the signal. frequency. The no-load circuit will in any case be very broadbanded and the no-load frequency is chosen to be equal to the varactors' series-resonance frequency. If the amplification is reduced and several amplifier stages are used to produce the desired total amplification of approximately 20 dB , bandwidths of $50 \%$ in the I- and S-bands and approximately $30 \%$ in the X -band should be possible. Several examples of broad-
band parametric amplifiers are show in Table 6.
Table 6. Performance of parametric amplifiers.

| $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{f}_{1} \\ & \mathrm{GHz} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{G} \\ & \mathrm{~dB} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \Delta f \\ & \frac{\mathrm{I}}{\mathrm{o}} \end{aligned}$ | Comments | Reference |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 19 | 20 | 1 varactor, 2 stąges, fouble-tuning. | 32 in [6] |
| 2 | 20 | 40 | Varactor-pair, 4 stajes, double-tuning. | 36 * |
| 4 | 16 | 15 | 1 varactor, 1 staje, jouble-tuning. | 33 |
| 9 | 19 | 5 | $\dagger$ varactor, 1 staje, double-tuning. | 35 |
| 18 | 19 | 1 | 1 varactor, 1 staje, double-tuning. | [10] |

(Between 1958 and 1962 parametric amplifiers of the transient-wave type, with several varactor stages, were both theoretically and practically investigated. Despite the fact that large bandwidth could be obtained in principle in this manner, the construction of the amplifiers was so complicated that they never became, and probably never will become of practical significance.)

As the expression for the amplification shows, its constant will mainly depend upon holding the pumping power, in other words m, constant. A parameter for the mmplification stability can be defined in the following manner:

$$
G S=\frac{d G / G}{d \alpha / c} n \equiv d \alpha=\frac{m^{2} S_{o}^{2}}{\omega_{1} \omega_{2}\left(R_{G}+R_{S}\right)\left(R_{L 2}+R_{S}\right)}
$$

It is shown in [5] that GS is minimized when $R_{I 2}=0$ and is approximately proportionate to $\sqrt{G}$. The change in amplification is typically 0.1 dB when $\mathrm{G}=20 \mathrm{~dB}$ with a 0.01 dB change in the pumping power. The best way to improve the amplification stability is to reduce $G$ and to use several stages to obtain the desired total amplification.

Relatively wide banded pumping and no-load circuits are required so that small changes in the pumping frequency shall not cahnge $G$. This requirement is usually fulfilled. All small changes in the circuit dimensions resulting from temperature changes or vibrations can also change $G$. Therefore, the circuits are designed as small and stable as possible, and by cooling the circulator and other circuits to a certain constant temperature, improved amplification stability is obtained, since all expansion with temperature variation is eliminated.

The dynamic range of an uncooled parametric amplifier, calculated from the noise level within 1 MHz bandwidth and at 1 dB amplification compression, is typically around 80 dB . The
corresponding saturation level at the output is -20 to -10 dBm . Future Development of the Parametric Amplifier

It has already been shown that there are many problems in maintaining extremely low noise in uncooled amplifiers:

1. The requirement that varactors have very low losses at millimeter-wave frequencies is difficult to fulfill.
2. The high necessary prmping frequency is a drawback.
3. Filtration problems in separating close pumping and no-load frequencies.

The rapid development of cooling techniques, which has already resulted in compact, reliable cooling apparati for temperatures down to $20^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$, gives strong support to the increased utilization of cooled parametric amplifiers. The noise temperature will not be any lower than what has already been obtained, but the technical performance will be improved through more compact cooling and amplification units, producing low noise and large bandwidth, and through the utilization of solid-state oscillators as pump sources. A parametric amplifier cooled to $20^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$, followed by another amplifier at room temperature, produces a total noise temperature of approximately $25^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$. If the first amplifier is cooled to $4.2^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$ and a second to $20^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$, the total noise temperature will be $4^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$. The varactor diode's characteristics must be improved in order to achieve close to maximum bandwidth simultaneously with low internal noise. Large bandwidth requires high pumping (large m) but at the same time the pumpheating of the varactor must be avoided by improving the heat sink and by reducing the loss resistance at low temperatures.

It is assumed to be likely that in any case, parametric amplifiers cooled to $20^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$, in connection with a decrease in the varactor's parasitic reactances and the utilization of balanced varactor pairs in several stages, will display the following bandwidth in 1985:

Frequency

| $1-4 \mathrm{GHz}$ | $40 \%$ |
| ---: | ---: |
| $8-12 \mathrm{GHz}$ | $20 \%$ |
| $15-20 \mathrm{GHz}$ | $10 \%$ |
| $30-40 \mathrm{GHz}$ | $3 \%$ |

The possibilities of constructing paxametric amplifiers for / 112 very high frequencies will be limited by the availability of pump oscillators. If one assumes that these will be developed up to 300 GHz , and use a no-load-signal ratio of 3 (for a cooled
amplifier), the maximum signal frequency will be approximately 75 GHz . Such an amplifier will, however, only have good noise characteristics if the signals are fed without phase information into both the partially overlapping signal and no-load channels. For example, this is the case in radjo astronomical measurements, in which the signal consists of broadband noise. In other cases, the noise fartor is increased by 3 dB .

Parametric amplification at even higher frequencies can possibly be realized by using a Josephson junction operating simultaneously as a pump oscillator instead of a varactor [11]. The Josephson current is not expected to contribute any noise, and low noise operation at approximately 300 GHz is theoretically possible. The Josephson junction has been shown to function as an oscillator at $8,000 \mathrm{GHz}$ (see the section on the Josephson oscillator), but at levels over $1,000 \mathrm{GHz}$ a normal, noisegenerating tunnel current begins to flow. rherefore, low noise amplification can be expected at pumping frequencies up to that level.

Since the circulator-coupled parametric amplifier has been the main topic here, it is of interest to know if the circulator causes any frequency limitations. In the lower frequency range, there already exists circulators which function well down to 0.1 GHz . With regard to very high frequencies, [12] mentions that circulators for 94 GHz and 220 GHz have been produced. However, the losses can be assumed to be larger than desirable at these high frequencies. Octave bandwidths are already common for frequencies up to the x -band and it will probably be relatively easy to maintain at all frequencies circulator bandwidths larger than the parametric amplifieris bandwidth. This shows that the circulator will not limit the performance of the parametric amplifier, with the exception of a noise factor which can be significant at extremely high frequencies.

A two-port parametric amplifier without circulator and with /113 non-reciprocal amplification characteristics has already been built [13, 14]. Two stages are normally used, one for the upconversion and one for the down-conversion of the frequency, together with a feed-back coupling from the second to the first stage. However, all such couplings have a tendency to be narrowbanded and therefore are not expected to be very significant, especially since circulators can be manufactured in very miniaturized form and directly integrated in, for instance, stripline circuits.

In certain applications, the use of a narrow band, but electronically-tunable amplifier can be signiricant. If a certain deterioration of the noise factor is allowable and the need for rapid tuning is not too large, this operation can be easily
obtained by coupling a tunable yIG filter before a broadband parametric amplifier. It should be pointed out here that narrowband, electronically-tunable, frequency-conversion low noise amplifiers have been constructed, and that they could be of greater significance in the future. Upper and lower sideband Erequency converters with broadband pumping circuits, but narrow band sideband circuits, are treated in [15]. By tuning the pumping frequency, the signal frequency can be tune up to an octave. Even larger tuning ranges, possibly several octaves at low frequency, might be possible. Another method is given in [16]. A broadband, low amplification is achieved through frequency conversion in the upper sideband and a narrowband, high additional amplification is achieved regeneratively through tuning a circuit at the lower sideband (in other words, the noload circuit). A varactor-tuned no-load circuit could in this way produce an electronically-tumable signal frequency.

1. Van der ziel. "On the mising properties of nonlinear eapacitances," I. Appl. Phys. Vol. 19, p. 999, (1948).
2. Suhl, H., "Proposal for a ferromagnetie amplifier in the microwave ranger ${ }^{\prime \prime}$ phys. Rev. p. 384, (April 1957).
3. Weiss, M., "A solid-state microwave amplifier and oscillator using ferrites," phys. Rev. p. 317, (July 1957).
4. Heffner, Kotzebue, "Experimental eharacteristics of a microvave parametrie amplifier using a semiconductor diode," Proce IRE, p. 1301, (June 1958).
5. Khan, P. J. "optimum design of varactor diode parametric ampifiars," proc. High freguency generation and amplifigation, Cornelf University, (1967).
6. Uenohara, M., "Cooled varactor parametric amplifiers," AdGanves in microwaves, Academic press, (1967).
7. Penfield, P. Jr. "Maximum out off frequency of varactor: diodes," proe. IEEE, p. 422, (April 1965).
8. Burrus, C. A., "Planar diffused GaAs millimeter-wave varactor diodes," Proc. IEEE, p. 1104. (June 1964).
9. De Jager, J. M., "Maximum bandwidth of nondegenerate parametric amplitier," Trans TEEEp MPT, p. 459, (1964).
10. Rinoshita, Maeda, "An 18 GHz single-tuned parametric amplifier with large gain-bandwidth product," Trans. TREs, Nip?, p. 409. (July 1970).
11. Russer, P., "Parametric amplification with Josephson junction," AEU, p. 417, (August 1969).
12. Feldman, N. E., "Syilabus on low-noise mierowave devices," Mierovave Journal, p. 53. (July 1969).
13. Thompson, G. H. B., "Unidirectional lower sideband parametric amplifier without eireulator," Proc. IRE, p. 1685 , (November 1961).
14. Maurer, Locherer, "Theorie nichtremproker Sohaltungen mit gleieher fingangs- und Ausgangsfrequenz unter verwendung nichtinearer Halbleiterelements," AEU, vol. 15. p. 71.
15. Mathaei, G. L., "Design theory of up-converters for use as electronically-tunable filters," Trans. IRE, MTY, (September 1961).

## REFERENCES

16. Iuksch, Stachejko, amplifier tuning,"
"A new approach to simplified parametric Proc. IRE: P. 1540, (June 1962).

## The Tunnel Diode Amplifier

The development of the tunnel diode and the physical
phenomena which explain its function have already been treated in connection with the tunnel diode oscillator. The negative resistance produced when an appropriate direct voltage is applied to the tunnel diode can naturaliy be utilized in a reflection amplifier. A circulator-coupling is alnost always used to separate the feeding and the amplified signal, and to give good stability against impedance variations in the source impedance.

To calculate the characteristics of the tunnel diode amplifiex the equivalent circuit in figure 18 is used.


FIGURE 18.

The voltage supply and stabilizing circuits on the right side of the figure have no effect on the high-frequency circuit within the amplifier!s band because of the construction of the band stop filter. $R_{B}$ is coupled in to the high-frequency circuit outside of the amplifier band and loads the diode so that no oscillations can occur.

If the diode's parasitic elements, $R_{s}$ and $L_{s}$ are ignored, the /116 reflection amplification can be written

$$
G=\frac{\left(\frac{1}{Z_{0}}+\frac{1}{R_{0}}\right)^{2}+\left(\omega 0_{j}-\frac{1}{\omega L_{k}}\right)^{2}}{\left(\frac{1}{Z_{0}}-\frac{1}{R_{0}}\right)^{2}+\left(\omega 0_{j}-\frac{1}{\omega I_{k}}\right)^{2}}
$$

At the resonance frequency $\omega_{0}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{k_{k}^{c}}}$ and with high
ification $\left(Z_{0} \neq R_{j}\right)$ amplification ( $Z_{o} \approx R_{j}$ )

$$
G_{0}=\frac{4 R_{j}^{2}}{\left(R_{j}-Z_{0}\right)}
$$

A calculation of the bandwidth yields $2 \Delta \omega=\left(R_{j}-z_{0}\right) / R_{j}^{2} C_{j}$. Therefore, the amplification-bandwidth product $\overline{\mathrm{GB}}=1 / \pi \mathrm{Rj}_{\mathrm{j}}$.

Through the utilization of special band-widening circuits, built as bandpass filters and placed between the diode and the load, the reflection coefficient and the amplification can be held nearly constant within a much wider band. Calculations in [1] show that the utilization of 2,8 , and an infinite number of impedance devices produce respectively approximately 2,7 and 10 times greater/GB than a single-tuned circuit. These are the cut-off values which apply when $R_{S}$ and $L_{s}$ are very small. In particular, the effect of an appreciable $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{s}}$ will be to reduce the bandwidth.

The tunnel diode amplifier's noise factor can be calculated with the help of the noise sources identified in figure 18. In part, the tunnel diode series resistance produces a thermal noise voltage, $\sqrt{\text { vin }}$, and the current Ie produces through the junction layer a fluctuation noise current $\left(I_{d}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$. I $I_{e}$ is composed of two opposing currents, each of which produces an equally large noise factor. Within the diode's negative resistance region, the current is completely dominant in one direction and one can set $I_{e}=I_{0}=$ the direct current through the diode. The noise calculations are most easily done in a series circuit [2] (in which the parallel combination of $\operatorname{RR}_{j}$ and $C_{j}$ is included in the $/ 117$ equivalent series resistance $-\mathrm{Re}_{\text {, }}$ with the noise voltage ( $\left.\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{ReRj}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ and the sum of all the reactances set at 0 ). The noise factor definition

$$
F=\frac{\text { total noise in } Z_{O}}{\text { GKIOB }^{\circ}}
$$

results in $F=\frac{1+\frac{e I_{0}}{2 k T_{0}} R_{i}}{\left(1-\frac{R_{g}}{R_{j}}\right)\left(1-\left(\frac{E}{F_{y}}\right)^{2}\right)^{3}}$
where the diodes resistive cutoff frequency

$$
f_{x}=\frac{\sqrt{\frac{R_{j}}{n_{s}}-1}}{2 \pi R_{j} C_{j}}
$$

under the condition that the amplification is high and the diode has a standard temperature $T_{0}=300{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$. The lowest noise factor is obtinined by minimizing the noise constant elorg/2kTo $=$ $20 I_{0} R_{j}$ and the ratios $R_{S} / R_{j}$ and $f / I_{r} . R_{S} / R_{j}$ is typically axound 0.1 and $f / f_{r}$ is rarely chosen at less than 0.25 , since the difficulties in stabilizing the amplifier against undesirable oscillations would then be too large. Thus, the denominator adds approximately I $d B$ to the noise factor. The value of the noise constant depends upon which semiconductor is used, but also to a certain degree and in an unknown manner, upon the construction of the diode itself. The lowest values obtained were 0.7 to 0.86 for GaSb, 1.2 for Ge and 1.5 for GaAs, which should lead to a noise factor on the order of $3.3 \mathrm{dE}, 4.3 \mathrm{~dB}$ and 4.9 dB , respectively. InAs and InSb semiconductors have several properties which are favorable for low noise factors [3]. Anong other things, the high mobility yields a small $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{S}}$ and the smail band gap contributes to a low $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{j}}$. Unfortunately, the band gap is so small that the diffusion current makes operating at room temperature impossible. However, cooled tunneled diodes made from these materials with very low noise factors are possible. Isolated tests with cooled tunneled diode amplifiers have already been reported [4]. Ge tunnel diodes were successfully cooled down from 300 to $80^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$, and in so doing the noise factor (at 1.3 GHz ) was reduced from 4.9 to 3.1 dB . This relatively large reduction is difficult to explain. It can be shown that if the tunnel diode's temperature $T_{d}$ deviates from $T_{0}$, the numerator in the expression for the noise factor will have the extra term

$$
-\frac{R_{z}}{R_{j}}\left(1+\left(w C_{j} R_{j}\right)^{2}\right)\left(1-\frac{M_{q}}{T_{0}}\right),
$$

which can be written

$$
-\left(\frac{R_{b}}{R_{j}}+\left(1-\frac{R_{s}}{R_{j}}\right)\left(\frac{f}{R_{x}}\right)^{2}\right)\left(1-\frac{T_{a}}{T_{0}}\right):
$$

With the normal values $R_{S} / R_{j} \simeq 0.1$ and $f / f_{r}=0.25$, and with $T_{d} \cong 0$, this term will yield a maximum reduction in the thermal noise on the order of -0.16. This should reduce the noise factor in $G e$ by 0.3 dB , while a reduction of 1.8 dB was measured. The

## ORIGINAL PAGE IS OF POOR QUALITY

cooling changes $R_{j}$ insignificantly and the product $R_{j} I_{o}$ was nearly constant. These figures show that the fluctuation noise must for some reason diminish with the temperature. The results of any investigations showing how the fluctuation noise changes with temperature have yet to be published. This means that it is difficult at present to evaluate the improvements in the noise factor which could be obtained by cooling the tunnel diode. By using a semiconductor with a small band gap, $\mathrm{Rj}_{\mathrm{j}}$ should be reduced to one-third of its value in Gasb. If one assumes at least as large a reduction of $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{s}}$, a noise factor of around 1.8 dB should be obtained with normal fluctuation noise, and a possible reduction in fluctuation noise resulting from the low temperature should then lead to a value of around I dB.

The use of the methods discussed above for reducing the noise factor necessarily entail a drawback in the form of reduced output power from the amplifier. As in the previously discussed tunnel diode oscillator, the maximum output power is proportionate to the diode's peak current and the difference between the valley voltage and the peak voltage. But a low value for the noise constant requires both low battery current, and therefore low peak current, and a small band gap, corresponding to a small difference between the valley voltage and the peak voltage. If the attempt is made, without regard to the noise factor, to maximize the output power in connection with a certain semiconductor, the peak current must be increased as much as possible. The upper limit is then set by the stability requirements for the /119 tunnel diode, which according to [5] can be written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{R_{S}}{R_{j}}<i_{j} \\
& \frac{L_{g}}{R_{j}^{2} C_{j}}<1 \quad \text { (when } \frac{R_{S}}{R_{j}} \text { is close to one). }
\end{aligned}
$$

If the expression for the amplification-bandwidth product is introduced and $I p$ max is set approximately equal $1 /\left(R_{j} \min \right)$, the stability requirement can be written as [6]:

$$
I_{p \max }<\text { constant }<\frac{1}{\pi \sqrt{3} B L_{s}} .
$$

Thus, small values for $\sqrt{G B}$ and $I_{s}$ at the same time produce higher peak current. The relationship between the constants for GaAs, Ge and GaSb is 1:0.5:0.27. If the maximum voltage modulation is taken into account, the relationship between the respective semiconductor's maximum output power will be 1:0.2:0.08.

To obtain a tunnel diode amplifier with both a low noise
factor and a high output power level (large dynamic region), one can build the first amplifier stage with a Ge or GaSb diode and the second stage with a GaAs diode. In this manner a dynamic region of approximately 84 dB is created (as normaliy calculated from the noise effect within 1 MHz and up to the 1 dB compression level). The maximum value of 90 dB given in [7] should be reached with a final stage containing two push-pull diodes.

Tunnel diode amplifiers have so far been built for frequencies up to 20 GHz . The maximum frequency must naturally lie under the diode's resistive cut-off frequency $f_{r}$ and to obtain an acceptable noise factor it should be at least three times lower. To obtain high $f_{r}$, the product $R_{j} C_{j}$ must be minimized, and it has been shown to decrease exponentially with increased doping. Since oscillations in the diode must be avoided, it is necessary /120 at the same time to reduce the series inductance about as much as $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{j}} \mathrm{Cj}_{\mathrm{j}}$. From the invention of the tunnel diode in 1958 until 1964, $\mathrm{fr}_{\mathrm{r}}$ reached the level of 4 GHz and between 1964 and 1968 it increased to 50 GHz . Diodes with $f_{r}$ up to 30 GHz could according to the catalog data have $I_{s}$ equal to 0.3 nH , but at $f_{r}$ equal to 40 to 50 GHz , $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{s}}$ decreases co 0.1 nH . It is mentioned in [6] that series inductances down to 0.02 nH have been realized, which with a rough approximation would make possible stable diodes with Ir values up to 150 GHz . As was mentioned earlier, tunnel diode oscillators already operate around 100 GHz . With the above Ine of reasoning it is likely that tunnel diode amplifiers will be made useful up to 30 to 50 GHz .

The results of the possible further development of the tunnel diode and the adherent amplifier can be summarized as follows:

Bandwidth. With $\sqrt{G B} \simeq 1 / \mathrm{Rj}_{j} \mathrm{C}_{j} \cong \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{r}}$, and for practical reasons the relation $f=0.3 f_{r}$, one obtains $B \sim f_{\text {, in other words that }}$ the percentage bandwidth is constant, independent of the frequencies. However, the diode's parasitic reactances will influence this relationship and reduce the bandwidth further as frequency increases. It follows from the stability criteria that, for example, the series inductance must be reduced about the same factor as $f_{r}$ (and f) isincreased by. One can therefore assume that a future amplifier for the 50 GHz level will have about the same bandwidth as an $X$-band amplifier today. The decreased parasitic reactances will of course also increase the bandwidth at lower frequencies. Considering that today's single-tuned tunnel diode amplifiers have approxinately $10 \%$ bandwidth between 1 and 10 GHz with moderate amplification ( 10 to 15 dB ), the following forecast can be made:

The use of a moderate number of broadband circuits in combination with reduced parasitic reactances will lead to at least 60\% (octave) bandwidth in the L and S -bands, $40 \%$ in the $x$-band and $10 \%$ to $15 \%$ within the range of 30 to 50 gHz .

Noise factor. Any great improvements of the noise factor in uncooled tunnel amplifiers are not to be expeoted. In the expression for the noise factor, the ratio $f / \mathcal{F}_{r}$ will remain about the same, $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{S}} / \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{j}}$ can possibly be reduced somewhat, but will increase with increasing frequency, and the noise constant can possibly be made somewhat smaller than at the present. This oan lead to a reduction of about 1 dB in the noise factor for 1969 , which according to [7] at 1,10 and 18 GHz is 3 , 5 and 7 dB . Thus, by 1985 the following noise factor values could be reached:

$$
\bar{E} \text { in } \mathrm{GHz} \quad F \text { in } \mathrm{dB}
$$

| 1 | 2 |
| ---: | ---: |
| 10 | 3 |
| 20 | 5 |
| 40 | 7 |

A further reduction in the noise Factor in Liguid nitrogen cooled tunnel diode amplifiers is obtained in two ways: through the use of semiconductors with small band gaps, and with an experimentally-confirmed extra reduction of the noise constant. The total reduction in noise as a result of this is hard to estimate, but can be assumed to lead to a noise factor which is at least $I \mathrm{~dB}$ lower than in the table above. Another advantage with cooling is that the tunnel diode's constant temperature results in a more stable amplification function.

It is also possible that a superconducting tunnel diode will be fully developed by 1985. This would consist of one tin and one aluminum electrode separated by a thin oxide layer (but not so thin that Josephson-tunneling occurs) and is calculated to produce a noise temperature of approximately $4^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$ [8] in a helium-cooled amplifier. However, the level of output power would be very low, on the order of -60 dBm and such a diode is not expected to be able to operate at such a high frequency as a normal tunnel diode, but could still be useful within the lower microwave range.

1. Scanlan, Him, "A design theory for optimum broadband reflection amplifiers," Trans. IEEE, MTT, vol. 12, p. 504, (1964).
2. Chow, W. F., Principles of tunnel diode circuits, John Wiley and Sons, (1964).
3. Armstrong, L.D., "Tunnel diodes for low noise microwave amplification;" Microwave Journal, (August 1962).
4. Stachejko, "Investigation of a L-band tunnel diode amplifier at low temperatures," Proc. IEEE, p. 1368, (November 1964).
5. Smilen, Youla, "Stability criteria for tunnel diodes," Proc. IREr p. 1206, (July 196才).
6. Sterzer, F., "Tunnel diode devices," Advances in microwaves,
i Academic Press, (1967).
7. Felaman, N. E., "Syllabus on low-noise microwave devices," Microwave Journal, p. 59, (July 1969).
8. Penney, J. D., "Potential of superconducting-tunnel diode amplifiers as high-frequency amplifiers," Proc. IEEEr p. 1628, (October 1959).

The possibility of producing high-frequency energy amplification by stimulated emission in an excited atom or molecular system was first discussed in 1953 by Weber [1], and later in 1955 by Basov and Prokhorov [2]. The first somcalled maser amplifier, which was based on the sorting out of excited atomis in ammonia gas, was built in 1955 [3], and the name "maser" was suggested as an abbrevation of "Microwave Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation." Theories for a continually-functioning three layer maser were published in 1955 [2] for a gas, and in 1956 [4] for a crystalline, paramagnetic material. In contrast to the gas maser, the solid-state maser can operate only if the crystal is cooled to a very low temperature (with liquid helium). This will bring about the added adcantage of the amplifier having an extremely low internal noise. The first experimental results with a paramagnetic maser operating in the X-band were published in the beginning of 1957 [5]. In this case, a good connection between the high-frequency field and the paramagnetic atoms was obtained by placing the crystal in a microwave cavity. However, this effective connection resulted in a very small bandwidth ( $<0.1 \%$ ). Consequently, the next important stage in the development of the maser was the construction of the traveling-wave maser [6], in which a "slow" electromagnetic wave in a delay line produces a broadband coupling to the active crystal. A bandwidth of approximately $1 \%$ was then obtained, and by varying the pump frequency and the magnetic field, the signal frequency was tuned up to $20 \%$. Furthermore, the trav-eling-wave maser produces non-reciprocal amplification and the feed-back damping can be easily increased by placing a number of ferrite devices in the delay line.

The amplification mechanism in a maser has a quatum mechanical basis. The atoms in a paramagnetic crystal possess a quantified magnetic moment which causes them to exist in a number of discrete energy states or energy levels. The difference in energy between these levels varies with the outer magnetic field, and a diagram of the energy levels appears in figure 19.


FIGURE 19.

MAGNETIC reld

If thermal equiabsolute temperature $T$, the ratio between the number of atoms, indicated by $N_{1}$, at energy level $W_{1}$, and the additional number of atoms, $N_{2}$, at the nigher energy level, $W_{2}$, can be written as:

$$
N_{2} / N_{1}=e^{-\frac{W_{2}-W_{1}}{k T}}
$$

where $k$ equals Bolzmann's constant.
Therefore, $\mathbb{N}_{2}<\mathrm{N}_{1}$ in a state of equilibrium. If such a crystal is radiated with a frequency $f$, possessing the photon energy

$$
\mathrm{fh}=\mathrm{F}_{2}-W_{1}
$$

in which h equals planck's constant, a resonance phenomena arises. Either a photon is absorbed and an atom makes the transition from energy level $W_{1}$ to $W_{2}$, or else an atom at level $W_{2}$ is stimulated, reducing its energy to $W l$ and emitting a photon in phase with the impinging photon. There is an equal probability that either one or the other transition shall occur if one assumes an equal distribution of atoms in each energy state. In a crystal at thermal equilibrium, in which most of the atoms are in the lower energy state, the number of atoms making the transition to the higher energy level will dominate, and the crystal will absorb radiation. Due to so-called relaxation processes, an excited atom will have a tendency to return to the lower level after a certain itime. If the relaxation process between two levels is weak and the impinging radiation is strong, there will be about the same number of atoms at each level. If the powerful radiation, or pump frequency, corresponds to the energy difference $W_{3}$ - W1 in figure 19 , it can be easily observed that the number of $\mathrm{N}_{3}$ atoms at level $\mathrm{W}_{3}$ will be larger than the number of $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ atoms at the $\mathrm{W}_{2}$ level. (The relaxation from $W_{3}$ to W2 should then be as low as possible.) A signal frequency $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}=\left(\mathrm{W}_{3}-\mathrm{W}_{2}\right) / h_{\text {will }}$ then mainly result in transition from $\bar{W} 3$ down to $\mathrm{W}_{2}$, so that a net amplification is obtained through stimulated emission.

If the amplification is high and the damping in the delay structure is negligible, the maser's noise factor can, according to [7], be written

$$
F=1+\frac{h f^{\prime}}{k m_{0}\left(1-\frac{N_{2}}{N_{3}}\right)}
$$

According to the above expression, $\mathrm{N}_{2}$ will diminish as the orystal temperature diminishes and when $\mathbb{N}_{2} \ll \mathbb{N}_{3}$, a K -band maser has the minimum valne $F_{m i n} \simeq 1.002$, or $T e m i n \simeq 0.5^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$. The lowest noise temperatures obtained in practice lie around 2 to $10^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$ [8].

The power output from a maser at 1 dB amplification compression is approximately -25 dBm [8].

The frequency range within which the maser is usable is nearly unlimited. Within the microwave range, maser ampifiers have been built between 1 and $70 \mathrm{GHz}[8,9]$. As predicted by Schawlow and Townes [10] in 1958, the principle, of the maser is applicable within both the visible and the infrared portion of the spectrum. During the last decade, very extensive research has been done using these ideas as a basis. The main attempt has been to porduce coherent oscillations. Such oscillators are /126 called lasers, with the it standing for light (as opposed to the "M" in microwave), The active media in a laser can be either a gas or a liquid, to which pump power: is brought in the form of incoherent light. However, semiconductor crystals which are pumped with a direct current have also been utilized. Laser techniques are not within the scope of this report, and are mentioned here only as indicative of the possibility of increasing the maser's frequency range.

Future Development of the Maser
The maser's most important characteristic, its extremely low internal noise, is already so close to an absolute minimum that further improvements are not possible in the amplification mechanism itself. One major disadvantage is that most of the useful masers to date require cooling with liquid helium in order to be functional. Since cooling techniques appear to be developing rapidly and will possibly soon result in compact, reliable, but not inexpensive cooling apparatus for temperatures as low as $4^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$, this drawback will probably become less significant. Given the state of current cooling techniques, $20{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$ can be set as the lowest temperature obtainable using relatively inexpensive, small and reliable cooling systems. This and other reasons has led to the development of the maser amplifier, which operates at relatively high temperatures (up to $780^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$ ). If, however, a microwave oscillator is used as the pump source, the maser's noise temperature will rise to the same level as the crystal temperature and furthermore, bandwidth will be reduced. According to [1l], it is still possible to obtain very low internal noise at increased crystal temperatures by using somcalled optical pumping via a laser. this is to be seen as a very likely line of development since optical pumping must also be used to develop maser amplifiers for frequencies up to the sub-millimeter range.

The maser's major disadvantage, its small bandwidth, is directly dependent upon and limited by the width of the levels describing the energy state of the system of atoms. Despite an intensive investigation of various crystal material, nothing has /127 been found in over ten years to expand the amplifier bandwidth by more than a few percentage points at most. It seens therefore very likely that the maser will continue to be a narrowband amplifier. Even with possible improvements in the crystal structure, a 108 bandwidth is assumed to be the upper limit.

1. Weber, J., "Trans.;" IRE, ED, O. 1, (June 1953).
2. Basov. Prokhorov, "Possible methods of obtaining active molecules for a molecular oscillator, " Journal of Experimental and Theoretical Physics, p. 184, USSR, (July 1955).
3. Gordon, Zeiger, Townes, "The maser-- new type of microwave amplifier, frequency standard and spectrometer," Physics Review, p. 1256, (August 1955).
4. Bloembergen, N., "Proposal for a new type solid state maser," Physics Review, p. 324, (October 1956).
5. Scovil, Feher, Seidel, "Operation of a solid state maser," Physics Review, p. 762, (January 1957).
6. De Grasse, Schulz-đu Bois, Scovil, "Three-level solidstate traveling-wave maser, ${ }^{\prime \prime}$ Bell Systems Technical Journal, p. 305, (March 1957).
7. Witthe, F. P. "Molecular amplification and generation of microwaves," Proc. IRE, p. 291, (March 1957).
8. Feldman, N. E., "Syllabus on low-ncse microwave devices," Microwave Journal, p. 59, (July 1969).
9. Hughes, Kremenek, "70~Gc Maser," Proc. IeEE, (May 1963).
10. Schawlow, Townes, "Infared and optical Masers," Physics Review, p. 1940, (December 1958).
11. Hsu, Tittel, "Optical pumping of microwave masers," Proc. IEEE, p. 185, (January 1963).

The function of circulator-coupled avalanche and Gunn diodes as broadband amplifiers was discussed in the chapter on oscillators. These amplitiers so far have high noise factors in the X-band of approximately 30 dB for a GaAs avalanche diode and approximately 15 dB for a Gunn diode with domain suppression. Since an avalanche diode with a Schottky barrier contact was reported at the 1970 MOGA conference to yield 10 dB lower FM noise than what is normal for an oscillator, it is assumed that significantly lowered factors will be obtained in an amplifier coupling. Also, a Gunn diode with domain suppression should yield a lower noise factor through increased homogeneity and improved contacts. Future diodes, especially developed for low noise amplification, will probably produce amplifiers with a noise factor of 5 to 10 dB . Particularly low internal noise can therefore not be expected from these types of amplifiers, but they are still of great interest since they can be used at very high frequencies and furthermore, are of the broadband type. Both Gunn and avalanche diode amplifiers should have upper cutoff frequencies of approximately 150 to 200 GHz . It is estimated that bandwidths of 30 to $67 \%$ will be reached, and possibly more when several diodes are included in the amplifier.

A Summarizing Forecast for Low Noise Amplifiers
Based on the previous discussions, the noise temperatures for various low noise amplifiers in 1985 are shown as a function of Erequency in Eigure 20. Figure 20 shows that the maser has the lowest noise temperature, but that the helium-cooled parametric amplifier is only insignificantly worse in this respect and has significantly harger bandwidth up to approximately 20 GHz . At higher frequencies, the maser produces larger bandwidth and between 50 and 300 GHz , it might be the only available low noise amplifier. Helium-cooled amplifiers should remain very expensive. However, it is possible that optical pumping will make the maser less expersive by allowing temperatures around $20^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$. The parametric ampifier can be constructed for any temperature between room temperature and $4^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$, and one can envision a heliumcoolea amplifier continuing to operate with a non-functioning cooling system with only a somewhat higher noise factor as a result. By using a diode oscillator, the pumping source necessary for a parametric amplifier will become very inexpensive and conpact.

Both regular and cooled tunnel diode amplifiers will have somewhat higher noise than paranetric anplifiers. In spite of this, they could be of use when extreme miniaturization and low driving power is needed, in which case the smaller dynamic range would not be significant.

This demands for only moderately low noise factors in combination with the desire for large bandwidth, the transistor. amplifier will dominate up to approximately 20 GHz , at which point the Gunn and the avalanche diode will take over and possibly produce amplification up to approximately 150 to 200 GHz .

Temp. in $\mathrm{O}_{\mathrm{K}}$


Figure 20. Noise temperature as a function of frequency for various types of low-noise amplifiers in 1985.

Completely new experiments with helium-cooled field-effect transistors indicate that in 1935 the cooled transistor amplifier could possibly produce somewhat lower noise than indicated by the PF curve in figure 20.

## Frequency Conversion

## Up-Converters for the Upper Sideband

Up-converters for high output power have become somewhat
significant in connection with the building of microwave-range link couplings solely with semiconductor components. In this case, the signal coming into a repeater is mixed down to an intermediate frequency, with which a transistor amplifier can easily produce the desired power amplification. Afterwards, frequency conversion occurs using the mixing function of a varactor diode whose local oscillator can be either a Gunn or avalanche type.

If the intermediate frequency is written $\mathrm{F}_{1}$, the oscillator or pumping frequency as $f_{2}$ and the output frequency as $f_{3}$, then for an upper sideband up-converter $f_{1}+\mathrm{E}_{2}=\mathrm{f}_{3}$. The conversion also produces a power amplification close the value of $f_{3} / f_{1}$ for a loss-free varactor. An up-converter for the lower sideband is characterized by the condition $\mathrm{f}_{2}-\mathrm{f}_{1}=\mathrm{E}_{3}$ and by an amplification which can be increased arbitrarily up to the oscillation limit. However; the former converter is preferred because of its higher stability, and since $f_{1}$ is normally much smaller than $f_{3}$, sufficient amplification is still obtained.

Since the intermediate frequency $\mathrm{E}_{1}$ consists of a modulated signal, it naturally has a certain bandwidth and can be described by a spectral function $f_{1}(f)$ centered around $f_{1}$. In absolutely distortion-free conversion, a frequency displacement occurs in the input spectrum so that the output spectrum can be written

$$
F_{3}\left(f+F_{2}\right)=1\left[F_{1}(f)\right.
$$

in which $k$ equals the conversion amplification.
$k$ is a constant in an ideal converter. However, in practice $k$ will vary for several reasons and, as a result, cause a certain frequency distortion. Among other things, the low-pass filter for $f_{1}$ and the band-pass filter for $f_{3}$ will produce a certain change in the amplitude of both the input and the output signals within the medium-frequency bandwidth. Since the amplification is proportionate to $\mathrm{E}_{3} / \mathrm{E}_{1}$, the amplification must vary somewhat within the band, especially with large medium-frequency bandwidths. Furthermore, the signal reflected by the band-pass filter at the lower sideband and at other frequencies which might possibly arise) will have various reactions on the varactor as the input frequency varies, which will also produce variations in amplification. Finally, a varying power level in the medium-frequency signal can change the varactor's medium-frequency impedance and, therefore, amplification. Naturally, this effect will only be exhibited if the medium-frequency power is so large that it is not negligible
in comparison to the pumping power.
The last influence will not be significant in an up-converter which must fulfill a very high linear requirement. The mediumfrequency power must then, in any case, be kepe very low so that undesirable intermodulation products are not created by the numerous input signals which, in such cases, are usually present. Upconverters of this type, made with extremely good linearity for use in communication satellites are described in [1]. Both output power and conversion efficiency will then be low, 1 mW and 10\%, respectively. Within a $\pm 40 \mathrm{MHz}$ band centered around 4165 MHz , the variation in amplification was only $\pm 0.1 \mathrm{~dB}$. The M-F frequency was centered around 80 MHz . Such a low-level converter is always used in combination with a post-connected travelling-wave tube.

If the requirements for low distortion and a large bandwidth are not too great, an up-converter for the upper sideband can produce enough output power to make a post-amplifier unnecessary. The dimension curves for such an up-converter, optimized for maximum output power, are shown in [2]. The most important curves have been reproduced in Figures 21 and 22. Figure 21 shows the normalized maximum output power

$$
\mathrm{p}=\frac{\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{ur}} \mathrm{~S}_{\text {mpx }}}{2 \pi \mathrm{P}_{3}\left(\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{B}}-\mathrm{S}\right)^{2}}
$$

as a function of $f_{3} / f_{C}$, where
$\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{Uq} 3}=$ the output power at $\mathrm{E}_{3}$.
$S_{\text {max }}=$ the varactor's maximum elasticity. If the varactor's lowest junction capacitance is written as $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{j}}$ minr then

$\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{b}}=$ the varactor's breakdown voltage.
$=$ the contact potential equal 0.5 V for silicon.
$f_{C}=1 /\left(2 R_{s} C_{j} \min \right)=$ the varactor's cutoff frequency with the forward bias $-V_{b}$, where $R_{s}=$ the varactor's series resistance.

It can then be written that


FIGURE 21.
The conversion efficiency from $f_{2}$ to $f_{3}$ is obtained from figure 21, in which it is also given as a function of $f_{3} / f_{c}$, under the conaition that $f_{1}$ is much smaller than $f_{2}$, so that $f_{2}^{C} / f_{3}=1$.


FIGURE 22.

By using the empirically determined relationship between $V_{B}$ and $r_{s}$, the value for $f_{c}$ and the maximum power loss, which is given in Figure $6-A$ and. $B$ in the chapter headed "The Frequency Multiplier," the forecasted values for P PUT3 can be calculated directly, if one proceeds from the forecast curves in the figure. The calculation is done using the lowest possible $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{C}}$ (in other words, highest $V_{B}$ ) which gives a permissible loss level in the varactor. It is shown then that maximum output power is obtained with relatively low efficiency. The results of such a breakdown calculation are presented in Table 7.

Table 7. Calculated maximum power output from a frequency converter, 1985.

| $\mathrm{E}_{3}$ <br> GHz | $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{C}}$ <br> GHz | $\begin{aligned} & P_{\text {IN2 }} \\ & W \end{aligned}$ | 웅 | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{UT}} \\ & \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Loss corrected } \\ & \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{UT} 2} \text { in } W \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 20 | 170 | 45 | 75 | 68 |
| 3 | 50 | 100 | 35 | 35 | 30 |
| 10 | 12. | 65 | 23 | 15 | 11 |
| 50 | 350 | 20 | 10 | 2 | 1 |
| 150 | 650 | 10 | 5 | 0.5 | 0.1 |

As with the frequency multiplier, if one introduces a circuit efficiency, decreasing from 0.97 at 1 GHz to 0.65 at 150 GHz , and correct for the losses in the band-pass filter at the output with a factor of 0.94 at 1 GHz down to 0.34 at 150 GHz , the result is the loss-corrected values for output power furthest to the right in the table. (The filter losses are estimated based on a damping value 0.45 ab in the $s$-band.) The corresponding forecast curve is shown in Figure 23. It applies to a fully-tuned varactor with an abrupt junction.

By overdriving the varactor, the output power should be several times larger: The overdriven up-converter for the upper sideband is treated in [3, 4]. According to [3], the maximum output power can be written

$$
P_{U N 3}=-\frac{f_{3}}{f_{c}} \frac{v_{B}^{2}}{R_{s}}, \text { when } V_{B} \gg \Phi \text { and } f_{3} \ll f_{C}
$$

in which $\beta$ equals the normalized power output, corresponding to p in [2].

The conversion efficiency can be written

$$
n=\frac{P_{U P 3}}{P_{I N 2}} \propto e^{-\alpha\left(I_{3} / I_{c}\right)} \text { if } f_{3} \ll E_{C}
$$



FIGURE 23.

If the ratio $f_{3} / f_{c}$ is large enough to make $\eta$ small, the obtained power output will be corrected by a factor of (1+2)/3.

Using the assumption that $\mathrm{F}_{3} \gg \mathrm{E}_{1}$, the results of the calculations in [3] show that a varactor with an abrupt junction produces maximum power $\beta=28 \cdot 10^{-3} \mathrm{~W}$ with $a \alpha=20$. If $\mathrm{P}_{\text {IN1 }} \ll \mathrm{P}_{\text {IN2 }}$, the power output can be written

$$
P_{U 13}=\frac{P_{\text {aigs }}}{\frac{1}{n}-1}=\frac{P_{a j a s}}{e^{a\left\{f^{3} / r_{c}\right.}-1}
$$

in which Pdiss equals the allowable losses.

Both of the expression above for the output power yield the following equality

$$
28 \cdot 10^{-3} \frac{P_{3} V_{B}^{2}}{f_{c}} \frac{P_{g}}{R_{s}} \frac{e^{20\left(f_{3} / f_{c}\right)}-1}{}
$$

With the help of Figures 6-A and $B$ in the chapter titled "The Frequency Multiplier," the $V_{B}$ values which satisfy this equasion can be calculated. $\mathcal{R}_{\mathrm{s}}, \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{c}}$ and Pdiss are all functions of $V_{B}$ according to this statement. After the maximum powers obtained through these calculations are multiplied by the correction factor $(1+2) / 3$, we obtain:

| $\mathrm{f}_{\text {UT3 }}$ | $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{C}}$ | $\mathrm{P}_{\text {IN } 2}$ | $\mathrm{P}_{\text {UT3 }}$ | Loss corrected P UT3 | $/ 137$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| GHz | GHz | W | W | in $W$ |  |
| 1 | 45 | 220 | 110 | 100 |  |
| 10 | 250 | 60 | 20 | 15 |  |
| 150 | 140 J | 6 | 0.3 | 0.1 |  |

This breakdown calculation shows that overdriving the reactor will produce a maximum of $50 \%$ higher power output than at normal tuning. The power increase is indicated by the lined area in Figure 23. Overdriving does not increase the power output more because of the loss limitations in the varactor. It is shown in [4] that without such limitations the power output can be increased by at least five times through overdriving. An estimation using Iimited Iosses based upon [4, Figure 7 and 10] and Figure $6-A^{\prime}$ and $B$ produced the following maximum powers:

| $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{UT}} 3 \\ & \mathrm{GHz} \end{aligned}$ | $F_{c}$ GHz | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{W}} \end{aligned}$ | $\frac{P_{W}}{W}$ | Loss corrected in $W$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 45 | 260 | 180 | 160 |
| 10 | 200 | 70 | 70 | 50 |
| 150 | 800 | 8.5 | 1.5 | 0.3 |

These values are assumed to be the upper limits for power outpui: with overdriving and they form the boundary of the lined overdriving region in Figure 23.

## REFERENCES

1. Broderick, Cuilwik, Hutchison, "Varactor up converters for satellite use," Microwave Journal, p. 57, (June 1967).
2. Watson, H. A. Microwave semiconductor devices and their circuit apolications, Mc Graw-Hill, chapter 8, p. 262, (1969).
3. Grayzel. A.r "The overdriven varactor upper side-band up converter, " Trans. IEEE, MTPr P. 561, (October 1967).

4: Gewartowski, Minettir "Large-signal calculations for the overdriven varactor upper-sideband up converter operating at maximum Jower output, " Bell Systems Technical Journal, p. 1223, (July-August 1967).

## The Mixer Biode

Historically, the point-contact diode was the first semiconductor device to become significant within microwave technology. It was first used in fairly primitive application as a detector, but at the beginning of the $1940^{\prime} \mathrm{s}$, it developed rapidly in connection with the large interest in radar techniques, in which its most important function was as a rixer diode with low internal noise. From the end of the 1940's until 1960, the mixer diode was improved only insignificantly, but around 196?, two new types of diodes appeared: the backward diode and the Schottky-barrier or Sb diode. Both were characterized by having very low flicker noise, which made them particularly in doppler radar. In the last years, mainly technological improvements have resulted in Sb diodes for increasingly high frequencies (up to 35 GHz ) and point-contact diodes with increased durability for stray pulses.

If a diode with the non-linear I-V characteristic

$$
I=I_{S}\left(e^{a V}-1\right)
$$

is subject to a strong local oscillation signal of amplitude $V_{\ell}$. and frequency $w_{0}$ and a much weaker signal of amplitude $V_{5}$ and frequency $u_{s}$, one can easily see that a summation and difference frequency will be created with an amplitude proportionate to $V_{s}$ and, in addition, dependent upon the diode constants $I_{s}$ and . Furthermore, a direct current component proportionate to $V_{0}^{2}$ and harmonics to $\omega_{0}$ will be created. In calculating the characteristics of the mixer, attention is only given to the impedance conditions in the signal frequency $s$, in the difference or intermediate frequency $\omega_{o}-\omega_{s}$, and the sumation or image frequency $\omega_{0}+\omega_{s}$. In the original work by [1], and in the sumary by [2], the mixer diode is treated first as a purely non-linear conductance, and the input conductance is calculated at signal frequency, the output conductance at the intermediate frequency, and the conversion losses with the high-Erequency signal's conversion to a medium-rrequency signal. These quantities are shown, first of all, to be dependent upon the diode characteristic constants $I_{S}$ and $a$, and also upon the local oscillator amplitude $V_{0}$ and the possible forward voltage $V_{B}$.

In addition, they are influenced by the load conductance which the image frequency has. One usually identifies three cases:

1. The image frequency has the same source impedance as the signal, and this is called the broadband case.
2. The image frequency has no load.
3. The image Irequency is short-circuited.

It is of special interest to consitute that the conversion losses which are normally measured according to (1) will decreased in case (2) but increase in case (3). In case (2), therefore, a part of the signal power converted to the image frequency will be reflected and transferred to the intermediate frequency. Measurements of point-contact diodes in [2] show that the conversion losses can in this way be decreased from 5.4 dB to approximately 4.4 dB . (It must be observed that the mixer's medium-frequency resistance will increase at the same time from, typically, 360 to approximately $930 \Omega$, so that the adaption to the mediumfrequency amplifier must be corrected.)

The idealized diode model discussed so far is only valid at low frequencies. Within the microwave range, the junction capacitance $C_{j}$ and the diffusion resistance $R_{S}$ become very significant, as do the diode capsule's stray capacitance $C_{F}$ and the series inductance $L_{s}$. The corresponding equivalent circuit is shown in Figure 24. In addition to a change in the high-frequency impedance, an increase in the conversion losses also occurs, which will be more fully discussed later.


FIGURE 24.
The mixer diode's most important property, its low noise function, is characterized by a noise factor which can be written
or $\quad E=10 \log \left[L_{1}\left(F_{\mathrm{mf}}+t-1\right)\right]$,
where $\quad L=$ the total conversion loss, $t=$ the total normalized noise temperature,
and $\quad F_{\mathrm{mf}}=$ the mid-frequency amplifier's noise factor (usually having a standard value of $1.41=1.5 \mathrm{~dB}$ ).

The mixer's noise factor always refers to its single-channel noise factor, unless otherwise specified. In other words; this signifies that value which is obtained by adding 3 dB to the measured value in a mixer which has equally-loaded signal and image frequency channels. Naturally, measuring the noise in a mixer with an image-frequency filter produces the single-channel value.

I is composed of several partial losses, of which the first described the reflection losses in the high-frequency and mediumfrequency sides. If the standing-wave ratio there is $S_{1}$ and $S_{2}$, respectively, we obtain

$$
L_{1}=10 \log \frac{\left(s_{1}+1\right)^{2}}{4 S_{1}}+10 \log \frac{\left(S_{2}+1\right)^{2}}{4 S_{2}}
$$

The earlier mentioned loss resulting from the diode's parasitic elements can be written $[2,3]$

$$
I_{2}=10 \log \frac{P_{\text {II }}}{P_{R_{j}}}=10 \log \left(1+\frac{R_{s}}{R_{j}}+w^{2} C_{j}^{2} R_{s} R_{j}\right) .
$$

$\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{j}}$ is an average value dependent upon the local oscillator power. I王 $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{j}}=1 / \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{j}}$, the minimum value is obtained:

$$
I_{2 \min }=10 \log \left(1+2 \omega C_{j} R_{s}\right)
$$

The actual conversion losses in the non-linear conduc-
tance $L_{3}$, are shown in [3] to be wholly determined by $I^{\prime}=$ $\bar{d}(\log I) / d(\log V), i . e .$, the derivitive of the I-V chacteristic drawn on a log-log graph. In the so-called broadband case, a point-contact diode (1N 21G) with $I^{\prime}=4.3$ produces $L_{3}=4.3 \mathrm{~dB}$, while a Sb diode with $\mathrm{I}^{\prime}=8.8$ produces $\mathrm{L}_{3}=3.6 \mathrm{~dB}$. The theoretical minimum limit for $L_{3}$ is 3 dB in this case.

A calculation in [4] shows that an Sb diode with an unloaded image frequency should produce $L_{3}=2 \mathrm{~dB}$. This should, therefore, reduce L 3 by 1.6 dB . Reductions measured so far have been about half of this, 0.8 dB .

Since the size of the total conversion loss $L=$ $L_{1}+L_{2}+I_{3} d B$ is now being discussed, the value of the normalized noise temperature $t$ must be examined before the noise factor can be determined. [3] indjcates that

$$
t=\frac{2}{L}\left[t_{d}\left(\frac{L}{2}-1\right)+1\right] \text { in the broadband case, }
$$

and

$$
t=\frac{1}{\mathrm{~L}}\left[\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{d}}(\mathrm{~L}-1)+1\right] \begin{aligned}
& \text { in the case of open or short-cir- } \\
& \text { cuited image frequencies; }
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
t_{\mathrm{d}}=t_{\mathrm{Lo}}+t_{\mathrm{w}}+\frac{\mathrm{K}_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{I}_{\overline{\mathrm{d}}}}{\bar{E}},
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{LO}}= \text { the noise added by the Iogal oscillator. This can } \\
& \text { be ignored when using a balanced mixer. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$t_{W}=$ the additional thermal and fluctuation noise. A typical value for a point-contact diode is 1.2 and for an Sb diode is 0.3 .
$\frac{K_{n}{ }^{T} d}{f}$ indicates the flicker or $1 / f-n o i s e$, where $I_{d}$ is the diode current in $\mu \mathrm{A}$ and f is the frequency in Hz . The constant $K_{n}$ is equal to $1.8 \mathrm{~Hz} / \mu \mathrm{A}$ in an Sb diode and approximately 1000 times larger in a point-contact diode, as shown in figure 25.

The diode's normalized
noise temperature $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{d}}$ in dB (with $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{LO}}=0$ )


Figure 25.

The troadband case: For a typical 2 GHz Sb diode, $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{S}}=11$ ohm and $C_{j}=0.8 \mathrm{pF}$ : This yields $L_{2}=0.9 \mathrm{~dB} . L_{1}=0.1 \mathrm{~dB}$ with SVF =1.2. Typically, $\mathrm{L}_{3} \simeq 3.6 \mathrm{~dB}$. This makes $\mathrm{L}=4.6 \mathrm{~dB}=2.89$. If the flicker noise and the local oscillator noise are ignored, we obtain $t_{d}=0.8$. From this, we can calculate $t=0.94$, and with $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{mf}}=0.5 \mathrm{~dB}=1.12$, we obtain the noise factor $\mathrm{F}=3.07=$ 4.9 dB . It should be observed that $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{mf}}$ is assumed to be 1 dB lower than the standard value 1.5 dB , but mid-frequency amplifiers with a noise factor of 0.5 dB can already be built now.

If one assumes that the product $\mathrm{R}_{5} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{j}}$ can be reduced to onehalf, then $L_{2}=0.5 \mathrm{~dB}$. By further improving the $I-V$ characteristic, $\mathrm{L}_{3}$ can probably be reduced down to 3.2 dB , so that $\mathrm{L}=3.8 \mathrm{~dB}=2.4$. This reduced $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{S}}$ can probably produce $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{d}}=0.7$. This would make $t=0.95$ and $F=2.57=4.1 \mathrm{~dB}$. A noise factor around 4 dB should, therefore, be assumed to be the lowest obtainable value. According to the catalog data, it is thought to be possible to hold $R_{S} C_{j}$ and, as a result, also the noise factor close to a constant value up to the $x$-band. With $F_{\text {mf }}=1.5 \mathrm{~dB}$, [5] indicates the following noise factors: 5.5 dB at $3 \mathrm{GHz}, 6.5 \mathrm{~dB}$ at $9.4 \mathrm{GHz}, 7 \mathrm{~dB}$ at 16 GHz and 7 dB at 35 GHz . [6] measured $F=5 \mathrm{~dB}$ at 10 GHz . These numbers are shown in Figure 26 and a curve has been drawn the estimated $\mathrm{Fmin}_{\text {malues }}$ parallel to the measured values. It is assumed that the forecast values for 1985 will lie very close to the latter curve.

In the most recent contribution to the broadband mixer theory [7], consideration has been given to the effect of the junction capacitance varying with the LO-signal. It was found that this caused a reduction in the conversion losses of approximately 0.5 dB , but that the noise factor for the most part was unchanged (approximately 5.5 dB in the s -band). A total conversion loss of 3.3 dB was calculated, and 3.5 dB was measured. A totally idealized diode with $\mathbb{R}_{s}=C_{j}=0$ is assumed to produce a noise factor of 4.8 dB at 3 GHz (with $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{mf}}=1.5 \mathrm{~dB}$, as usual).

The image frequency sees an open circuit: According to the calculations given earlier in [4], $\mathrm{L}_{3}$ in the very best case can decrease to 2 dB . For a 2 GHz diode, $\mathrm{L}_{2}$ r as ir the broadband case, will be at least 0.5 dB and $\mathrm{L}=0.1 \mathrm{~dB}$. This yields $\mathrm{L}=2.6 \mathrm{~dB}=1.82$. With $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{d}}=0.7$, we have $\mathrm{t}=0.87$. If $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{mf}}=0.5 \mathrm{~dB}=1.12$, the lowest possible noise factor will be $F=1.80=2.6 \mathrm{~dB}$. The signal frequency bandpass filter which is used to reactively terminate the image frequency, produces, however, an unavoidable damping of several tenths of a decibel, which, therefore, must be added to the F-value. In this manner, the minimum value for the noise factor is approximately 3 dB .

Single channel
noise factor in $d B$

a) Measurement from [5]
b) The curve's coninuation given in fig. 5.
c) Calculated according to [7] for an ideal diode.
d) Measurement from [6]
e) Measurement from [8]
f) Lowest limited estimated with $F_{m f}=0.5 \mathrm{~dB}$.
g) Measurement from [8] using $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{mf}}=0.5 \mathrm{~dB}$.

In currently available diodes, $F_{3}$ has been measured between 2.8 and 3 dB . Using the same calculation as above, this produces $F=3.3 \mathrm{~dB}$, to which the filter loss must be added, producing a total of approximately 3.7 dB .

These calculations show that an open image frequency circuit can produce a noise factor approximately 1 dB lower than in the broadband case.

There are only a few published results concerning measurements of the noise factor in mixers with open image frequency circuits. The minimum noise factor measured in [8] was 4.4 dB at 6 GHz , with $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{mf}}=1.5 \mathrm{~dB}$. Recalculating with $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{mf}}=1.5 \mathrm{~dB}$, the noise factor becomes approximately 3.4 dB . According to [8], the lowest possible noise factor can also be estimated. For a diode with a cutoff frequency around 500 GHz , a noise factor of approximately 3.5 dB should be obtained at 5 GHz . Using $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{mf}}=0.5 \mathrm{~dB}$, and with the addition of a filter loss of 0.4 dB , we obtain $f=2.9 \mathrm{~dB}$, which agrees with earlier estimates. According to unpublished results, a single-channel noise factor of /145 2 dB in the s-band was measured at MIT in 1966 using pointcontact diodes in a balanced mixer. The input filter's damping, which in this case was 3 dB , was subtracted from the result of the measurement. $F_{m f}$ was 0.5 dB . The surprisingly low result must be viewed with a certain reservation until it is verified through publication. Measurements in [2] show that the noise factor with an open image-frequency circuit, in comparison to the bandwidth case, improves approximately 0.6 dB , for example, from 8.5 to 7.9 dB . In this case, point-contact diodes were used. Therefore, it can be seen as Iikely that Sb diodes with lower conversion losses should be able to exhibit corresponding improvement of approximately 1 dB in keeping in agreement with the above calculations.

In terms of the use of mixer diodes at very high frequencies, where today the point-contact diode (over 50 GHz ) is used exclusively, one can expect that the Sb diode, through refined production techniques, will be usuable almost as high up in the frequency spectrum. A 50 GHz Sb diode has a junction diameter of approximately $3 \mu$. It should be technically possible to reduce this value to $0.3 \mu$, which would approach the diameter of the very smallest points (0.1 $\mu$ ) in point-contact diodes. An attempt to estimate the function of future Sb diodes over 50 GHz can be done based upon the way in which the conversion losses in pointcontact diodes typically vary with high frequencies, as is indicated in [9]. Figure 27 shows an approximate average-value curve for measured conversion losses (the broken portion or the curve represents an extrapolation which has some support from the measurements presented in [10])。

If it is assumed, then, that the conversion losses in a

Sb diode could be approximately 1 aB lower and $t$ is set approximately equal to one, the noise factor $F$ can be calculated (using $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{mf}}=0.5 \mathrm{~dB}$ at the lower frequencies and $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{mf}}=1.5 \mathrm{~dB}$ at the higher frequencies, where a higher mf is required). The result obtained, which can be viewed as an approximate forecast for 1985, is shown in figure 28.
L in dB for point-
contact diodes


For frequency conversion at very high frequencies where a
local oscillator is not feasible, the so-called harmonic mixer can be utilized, in which the mixer crystal produces a sufficiently high Lo-frequency through harmonic generation. In this case, however, the conversion losses and the noise factor will be significantly higher than in the previously discussed fundamental mixer. It should be noted that a laser can be utilized as a local oscillator at extremely high frequencies. Experiments with point-contact diodes have been done in which frequencies as high as 30,000 and $60,000 \mathrm{GHz}$ ( 10 and $5 \mu$ wavelength respectively) have been mixed [11, 12]. These cases have used diodes of the metal-metal type in which a metal point with a diameter of approximately $1,000 \mathrm{~A}$ is pressed against a metal plate. Tunneling of electrons through a thin, "natural" oxide layer between them produces a nonlinear $I-V$ characteristic and the possibility for mixing.

The possible future improvements in flicker noise given in figure 25 are very hard to predict. It can be speculated, however, that minor improvements in these values can be expected.

Noise factor for broadband mixers with Sb diodes.


Figure 28. Performance estimate for 1985.

## Maximum Power Level for a Mixer Diode

After the noise factor, the next most important characteristic of a mixer is its durability for high signal power, partially in terms of the saturation level and partially concerning the significantly higher level at which the diode's characteristics are permanently worsened.

The saturation level. With increasing signal power, the medium-frequency power will in the end decrease in relation to the desired Iinear relationship to the signal. The signal level which produces such a reduction or compression of 1 dB is usually called the saturation level. Saturation usually occurs when the signal power exceeds by 0.3 to 0.5 times the local oscillator power. Therefore, increased Lo-power is needed to increase the saturation level. This, however, leads to increased conversion losses (both $L_{2}$ and $L_{3}$, discussed earlier will increase), and, as a result, to an increased noise factor.

Comparing point-contact and Sb diodes shows that with increasing Lo-power, the latter maintains its lower conversion losses within a much larger range than the point-contact diode. For example, [3] reports that a 2 GHz Sb diode can normally be driven with 20 mW LO-power to 1 mW , and that the increase in the noise factor is then approximately $0.5 d B_{\text {, }}$ while the increase in the saturation level is 13 dB , or to approximately +10 dBn .

Thus, it is possible to contruct a mixer with a saturation level of 20 to 40 mWr but as the level increases, one must accept an increased noise factor, which, therefore, exceeds the
earlier discussed minimum values. It should be noted here that the so-called back diode, which, since its noise characteristics are completely comparable to those in the Sb diode, has to this point not been Eully discussed, has a much smaller dynamje range. This is because the diode begins to draw current with a polarity opposed to the detection direction, at very low voltages. One possible advantage in this context is that the back diode mixer reaches maxinum sensitivity at very low local oscillator power (several tenths milliwatts).

The mixer diode's power durability, Since mixers are often used in redar receivers where they are subject to stray pulses through the MR-tube, the mixer diode's durability for short highfrequency pulses (somcalled spike leakage) is of special interest. Therefore, a testing method was developed early [i] using a pulse which was much shorter than the diode's thermal time constant. It was predicted, then, that only the pulse's energy content (measured in erg) would be deciding in terms of how the diode was affected. The test pulse was obtained from a charged artificial lead and its energy was chosen so that all of the "weaker" diodes were destroyed or soon worsened by one pulse and could be sorted out, while normal diodes were not markedly affected. Attempts have shown that if the diodes are subject to a large number ( $10^{5}$ to $10^{6}$ ) of such test pulses, they can only withstand approximately ten times lower peak energy [5].

However, practical experience from radar stations has shown /149 that the pulse test described here is not very valuable for judging a diode's durability for: spike leakage. Very recent investigations [13] have shown instead that with high-frequency pulses lasting 2 to 50 ns , it is the power level during the pulse which determines how the diode is affected. This is probably because the diode is destroyed by dielectric breakdown in the epitasial junction, which is caused by the high-frequency voltage and, consequently, by the high-frequency power. This means, among other things, that in radio stations where the high-frequency pulse has a very short climbing time, so that the ri-tube does not have time to damp its first part, diodes are destroyed particularly easy, even if the stray pulse is very short.

To increase a diode's durability for very short pulses at high high-frequency power, it is necessary to construct the diode so that, at a high power level through the injection of minority charge carriers, it quickly achieves the lowest possible highfrequency impedance, and in this way prevent a high voltage from building up. Special point-contact diodes with just this quality are begimning to be produced [13]. One such diode for 16 GHz withstood up to 50 W during a 5 ns -long high-frequency pulse, while its durability for the energy of a discharge pulse can go up to 10 erg. The corresponding figures for a 16 GHz Sb diode of GaAs are 20 W and 10 erg, respectively, and for a normal point-contact
diode (1 N78) 7.5 W and 2 erg. These numbers underscore the possibility of developing special "spike resistant" mixer diodes and since this development has produced tangible results in a short time, one can expect further major improvements, possibly also in connection with special sb diodes. A mixer diode could possibly be able to resist up to several hundred watts of spike power. However, if this development does not come about, mixer diodes can still be effectively protected by a combination of an SM-tube and a diode limiter, which will eliminate the spike effect.

Concerning the power durability of point-contact diodes with pulses longer than 0.1. $\mu$ s, [5] presents the continuous curve which is reproduced. in figure 29. In this case, the diode is /150 destroyed through thermal over-loading. Considering that a point-contact diode for 16 GHz is destroyed with approximately l W in-fed CW power, but that a special power-resistant diode and a Sb diode can withstand up to 4 W one should be able to estimate the maximum powers which the latter type of diode can withstand at various frequencies by moving the continuous curve in figure 29 to a four-times-higher power level. The power durability given above

Max. peak power i iv


Figure 29.
for CW power is applicable to the naturally existing misadaption at high power. If highfrequency power is adapted to the diode, a X-band Sb diode will withstand 0.8 W and a point-contact diode will withstand 0.6 W , when the diodes are directcurrent loaded with 10 K . In contrast, at 10 ohm load, the Sb diode can only withstand 0.16 W and the pointcontact diode 0.8 W [14].

## Broadband Mixexs

With normal point-contact diodes in coaxial circuits, it has been possible for a long time to build balanced mixers with octave bandwidth up to the $x-b a n d$. (In this case, the signal and image frequencies have the same source impedance.) By using Sb diodes with an intrinsic impedance of close to 50 ohm, and in which the normal capsule is replaced by a "beam-lead" design which results /151 in low parasitic reactances, very large bandwidths can be obtained in combination with microstrip lines. One such commercial mixer
is described in [15] which covers from 1.5 to 12.4 GHz with a noise factor of 6 to 7 dB , and a similarly integrated mixer for 0.01 to 18 GHz is mentioned in [16]. Detailed aspects of the construction of such broadband circuits are given in [17], among other places.

The continuing development within this range can hardly result in increased bandwidths for frequencies under 20 GHz , but can lead to bandwidths somewhat over an octave up to 100 GHz . Naturally, broadband construction is always a compromise with the simultaneously-increasing noise factor. Mixers with the lowest possible noise factor, having a reactive image-frequency termination, should obtain maximum bandwidths of $10 \%$.

One type of mixer which is of interest in certain special systems is the double-balanced mixer, which suppresses the reception of the image frequency within a relatively broad band. Such mixers with 20 dB of image frequency suppression have been built with octave bandwidth between approximately 0.5 and 8 GHz [18]. Continuing development should produce octave bandwidth for such mixers up to approximately 30 GHz .

It should be emphasized here that the type of mixer discussed above can be expected to have great significance in combination with a broadband, low-noise pre-amplifier, for example a parametric amplifier. Here, the noise is amplified equally in the signal and the image frequency channels, and a simple balanced mixer should then be subject to approximately twice as large noise effects as a mixer with image-frequency suppression. In this case, the difference in the total noise factor will be near 3 dB . (It is assumed here that the useful signal is only found in one channel.) Naturally, instead of using a mixer with suppressed image frequency, a narrow-band filter can be placed before a normal mixer, but then a very small-band function, in which the filter must be tuned mechanically for carious frequencies, results.

The Tunnel Diode Mixer
During the first part of the 1960's, the development of the /152 tunnel diode mixer went on at the same time as the development of the tunnel diode amplifier. The former should have the advantage in possessing good stability and being operational without a circulator. One hoped to obtain noise factors as low as in an amplifier, and definitely lower noise than in a normal mixer diode.

The tunnel diode's nonlinear $I-V$ characteristic can produce good mixing qualities and with sufficient modulation in the negative-resistance region, the conversion losses can be reduced.

Despite the development of a large number of tunnel diode mixers, the results obtained have not been competitive with normal
diode misers and least of all with misers using Sb diodes. (The highly-doped tunnel diode and the back diode comprise an exception to this, in that they produce nearly the same characteristics as a $5 b$ diode, but do not exhibit any negative resistance.) to be sure, the tunnel diode mixer produced conversion losses around $0 \mathrm{~dB}_{\mathrm{r}}$ or Iow amplification, but the noise factor was about the same as in a good Sb diode miner. Furthermore, the dynamic range became less and the power durability, which in the beginning was thought to be larger than with a point-contact diode, was barely in the same class as the sb diode. Reducing the conversion loss only for the purpose of increasing amplification is no longer of great significance, since very low-noise, compact, integrated medium-frequency amplifiers can be built with transistors.

Even if there is little interest now in the tunnel diode miser, it is conceivable that a miser which is in some ways similar and which furthermore utilizes the superconductor phenomenon will be very significant at very high frequencies in the future. This superconductive mixer is based on the Josephson effect and is treated in the following section.

The Josephson Junction as a Local Oscillator and Miser
As previously discussed, point-contact diodes in semiconductors can be replaced by metal diodes, and when the detection mechanism is exhibited in an intermediate oxide layer, the diode can be used for mixing in the sub-millineter range. The Josephson junction is also of use for mixing from the millimeter to the sub-millimeter range and is of very special interest since it can function simultaneously as a local oscillator 1191 . (The construction of the Josephson junction was described earlier in the section titled the Josephson oscillator.)

The presence of a mixing function in a Josephson junction can be most easily observed in the I-V characteristic in the form of step-by-step current increases with constant voltage at regular voltage intervals, when the junction is subject to power at a certain frequency $f_{s}$. The Josephson junction oscillates at a frequency determined by the voltage $V_{B}$ according to the equality $f_{\mathrm{OsC}}=2 \mathrm{eVB} / \mathrm{h}$. When $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{B}}$ is such that $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{OSC}}=\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{S}}$, the first current stage produces an additional direct current, since the difference frequency is 0 . Since the junction also functions as an effective harmonic generator, the frequencies $n f_{s}$ are created, and with increasing $V_{B}$ beats are exhibited at even intervals with the one harmonic after the other. The size of the nth current stage is according to [20] proportionate to Bessel's function of the order $n=J_{n} \frac{2}{d f}$, where $V \sim$ is the equivalent applied high-freguency amplitudes Figure 30 A shows the appearance of the I-V characteristic for a Josephson junction without applied high-frequency power, and figure $30 B$ shows the changes with radiation of a certain frequency. Thus, the observation of the current stages described
here make it possible to utilize the Josephson junction as a frequency analyzer, which according to [21] is of use up to at least 1000 GHz and possibly up to 8000 GHz .

An experiment is described in [19] which shows the usefulness of the Josephson junction for routine superheterodyne receiving. If $V_{B}$ is adjusted so that the difference between the oscillation frequency $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{osc}}$ and the receiving frequency $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{S}}$ is equal to a resonance frequency $f_{0}$ in a resonator which is coupled to the junction, the measurements indicate that a "medium- /154 frequency signal" will be excited at $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{O}}$. A mixer of this type can be of major significance for the millimeter and sub-milimeter ranges, especially if the problems creating an effective coupling (adaption) between the signal circuit and the junction, and between the difference-frequency circuit and the junction are overcome. In addition, the construction of point-contact junctions currently in use must be improved to allow for greater mechanical stability. One can assume that a mixer of this type will be developed into an extraordinarily sensitive receiving device for extra high frequencies. The necessary cryotechniques, which in many cases are a major disadvantage, contribute to the good lownoise characteristics of this mixer.


Figure 30.

## REFERENCES

1. Torrey, Whitmer, "Crystal rectifiers," Radiation Labor$/ 155$ atory Series, Vol. 15, McGraw Hill, (1948).
2. O'Neill, $\ddagger$. J.f "Image-frequency effects in a microwave crystal miner," Proc. IEE, p. 2019-2024, (November 1965).
3. Hewlett-Packard application note \#907, (May 1967).
4. Strum, P. D., "Some aspects of mixer crystal performance," PLOC. IRE, p. 875-889, (July 1953).
5. Sylvania, Nicrowave product guide, (c. 1970).
6. Texas Instruments, "Planar Schottky barrier microwave mixers and varactors in gallium arsenide," House publication, (c. 1966).
7. Leichti, C. A., "Down-converters using Schottky barrier diodes," IEEE, ED, p. 975-933, (November 1970).
8. Barber, M. R., "Noise figure and conversion loss of the Schottky barrier mixer diode," Trans. IEEE, MTP, p. 629635, (November 1967).
9. Bauer, Cohn, Cotton, Packard, "Millimeter wave semiconductor diode detectors, mixers and Erequency multipliers" Proc. IEEE, p. 595-605, (April 1966).
10. Burrus, C. A., "Millimeter-wave point-contact and junction diodes," Proc. IEEE, p. 575-587, (April 1966).
11. Abrams, Gandrud, "Heterodyne detection of $10.6-\mu$ radiation by metal-to-metal point contact diodes." Applied Physics Letters, p. 150-152. (August 1970).
12. Sokoloff, et. al., "Extension of laser harmonic-frequency mixing into the 5 -micron reyions," Applied Physios Letters, p. 257, (September 1970).
13. Anand, Y., Howell, $C .$, "The real culprit in diode failure," Microwaves, $p, 36-38$, (August 1970).
14. Bayliss, Cabrera, Howe, "why a Schottky-barrier? why a point-contact?" Microwaves, p. 34-45, (March 1968).
15. "Multi-octave balanced mixers," Microwave Journai, p. 34, 156 (September 1969).

## REFERENCE

16. "Spectrum analyzer measures absolute power-- 130 dBm to 33 dBm " Microwaves, p. 50, (November 1970MI
17. Van Wagoner, R., "Multi-octave bandwidth microwave mixer circuits " 1968 GMTT Intern. Misurow. Symp. Digest, p. 8.
18. "Image rejection mixersi" Microwave Journalr p. 38, (October 1969).
19. Longacre, A. Jr., "The Josephson function as a 100 GHz oscillator-mixer," AD-report 704906, (April 1970).
20. Grimes, Richards, Shapiro, "Josephson-effect far-infrared detector," JAP, p. 3905, (July 1968).
21. McDonald, D. G., et al. "Harmonic generation and submillimeter wave mixing with the Josephson effect." Applied Physics Letters, $p, 121$, (August 1969).

## The Detector Diode

Tt has already been pointed out in commection with the mixer / / 157 diode that the point-contact diode was the first semi-conductor device to be significant within microwave technology. Its function as a detector was improved greatly during the $1940^{\prime} \mathrm{s}$ along with the refinement of semiconductor technology. The next notable step in the development occurred around 1967 in the form of the back and $s b$ diodes, which possessed increased current: sensitivity and improved noise characteristics. At the same time, reproductability was increased greatly in the manufacturing processes.

A detector's characteristics are determined first and foremost by its $I-V$ characteristic. For point-contact and Sb diodes, both of which consist of a more or less perfect metal-semiconductor junction, the current's dependency upon the voltage is described by the equality

$$
I=I_{B}\left(e^{a V}-1\right)
$$

where

$$
I_{S}=\text { the saturation current }=\text { the mostly constant electron }
$$ current from the metal to the semiconductor;

$\alpha=\frac{e}{n k^{\prime} T} ;$
e = the electron charge;
$k=$ Boltzmann's constant;
$T=$ absolute temperature in ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{K}$;
and $n=$ a figure of merit which, for an ideal diode, is one. 1.05 is typical for $S b$ diodes and 1.8 for point-contact diodes.
With $V$ in volts and $n=1.0$, at room temperature we have

$$
I^{n}=I_{s}\left(e^{40 V}-1\right)
$$

The size of $I_{S}$ for a Sb diode is on the order of 0.01 \#A.
The expression for the $I-V$ chacteristic in a back diode is significantly more complicated, since in this case the size of the current is determined by the tunnel effect, as illustrated /fs8 in Figures $13-B$ and $E$. The peak current, which is shown in $C$ and $E$ of the same figure, has been reduced to almost zero by combining a highly-doped n-type substrate with a low-doped p-semiconductor. This produces a widening of the layer through which the electrons must tunnel, and, consequently, a reduction in the tunnel current. Figure 31 gives a qualitative comparison of the I-V characteristics of the three diodes discussed.

When the signal voltage $V_{s}$ is low, the detector current is


Figure 31.
proportionate to V 2 and, therefore, to the input power. In this case, the detector is said to have a quadratic characteristic and, for example, for a point-contact diode, the detector remains quadratic for currents up to $10 \mu \mathrm{~A}$. At larger signal voltages, the diode functions practically as a current breaker which produces interruption during the negative half-period and short-circuits $/ 159$ during the positive half-period with a short-circuit resistance dependent upon the slope of the linear part of the $I-V$ curve. For such a so-called linear detector, which is normally used for envelope-detection of an amplitude-modulated signal, consideration does not need to be given to the diode's noise chacteristics. This is so because the requirements for such a detector are restricted to: the largest possible linear region in the I-V curve, low series resistance, high back resistance, and high breakdown voltage. It can be quickly determined here that the Sb diode is superior to the other diode types in these regards. The requirements for the chacteristics of a quadratic detector are more complicated, since consideration must be given to the diode's intrinsic noise, and in the future, only this type of detector will be treated.

One of the most important chacteristics of a small signal detector is the current sensitivity $\beta$. This is defined as the ratio of the increase in the short-circuit current to the input high-frequency power, and is written

$$
B=\frac{\Delta I}{P I N}
$$

For small signals in the active semiconductor junction, the following applies:

$$
\beta=\frac{\alpha}{2}=\frac{e}{2 \pi x T^{0}}
$$

In addition to the active junction or video resistance $\mathrm{Rj}_{\mathrm{j}}$, the detector has two unavoidable parasitic elements, the junction capacitance $C_{j}$ and the diffusion resistance $R_{s}$. Because of these, $\beta$ is reduced to a value which can be easily derived from the detector's equivalent circuit, shown in Figure 32. The following expression is then obtained:


It is generally true that $\beta$ is dependent on the forward bias and reaches a maximum value when the $I-V$ curve is most non-linear. Figure 31 shows that this maximum is obtained without forward bias in a back diode, but with approximately +0.3 V forward bias in a sb diode. For a more complete calculation of the variation /160 in $\beta$ with the forward bias $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{d}}$ and the corresponding current Id, the following expressions for $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{j}}$ and $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{j}}$ can be used:

$$
R_{j}=\frac{1}{\frac{d I}{d V}}=\frac{n k T}{e\left(I_{a}+I_{b}\right)}
$$

$$
c_{j}=\frac{c_{i o}}{\left(1+\frac{v_{d}}{v_{b}}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}}
$$

where and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{b}} & =\text { the diffusion potential, } \\
\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{jo}} & =\text { the junction capacitance with } 0 \mathrm{~V} .
\end{aligned}
$$

With low forward bias, when the derivitive of the I-V curve is small and, therefore, $R_{j}$ is large, one can state

$$
B=\frac{\alpha}{2} \frac{1}{1+\omega^{2} C_{j}^{2} R_{j} R}
$$

If one assumes that the active diode surface has a radius $r$, then $C_{j} \sim r^{2}, R_{j} \sim 1 / r_{i}^{2}$ and $R_{s} \sim 1 / r$, which yields $C_{j}^{2} R_{j} R_{S} \sim r$. Therefore, to maximize $\beta$ at a certain frequency, $\bar{r}$ must be made very small. At the same time, consideration must be taken so that $R_{j}$ does not become too big, which can lead to an unsuitably high time constant in the video circuit. Typical values for Bo for a point-contact, Sb , and back diode are respectively 12, 20 and $30 \mu \mathrm{~A} / \mu \mathrm{W}$.

To characterize a detector's noise characteristics when it is followed by a video amplifier, one has originally defined a factor of merit $M$ which comprises one component in the signalnoise ratio in the video amplifier's output. It can then be shown that [1]
where

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { The signal-to-noise ratio }=M \frac{F_{I N}}{\sqrt{4 k R_{o} B}} \\
& M=\frac{R_{j}}{\sqrt{R_{j}+R_{A}}} \\
& R_{A}=\text { the equivalent noise resistance in the video ampIi- } \\
& B=\text { fiers input, normally } 1200 \text { ohm; } \\
& B=\text { the video amplifier's effective bandwidth. }
\end{aligned}
$$

This expression for $M$ applies given that the noise from the detector's $R_{j}$ is purely thermal ( $R_{s}$ is ignored). If an ideal transformer with conversion ratio $n$ is in-coupled between the detector and the video amplifier, $R_{A}$ in the expression for $M$ will be reduced to $R_{A} / n^{2}$, which, with large $n$ approaches zero. Therefore, a short-circuit value for $M$ is sometimes defined as

$$
M_{k}=\beta \sqrt{r_{j}}{ }^{\prime}
$$

In cases where a certain direct current is applied to a forward-biased detector, the noise effect from $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{j}}$ will increase to the value $t 4 k T_{o} B R j$ because of the presence of fluctuation and flicker noise. (T is the normalized noise temperature.) The detector's figure of merit then takes the form of

$$
M=\frac{B R_{j}}{\sqrt{\theta R_{j}+R_{A}}}
$$

One increasingly common dimension of a detector's sensitivity
is the tangential sensitivity. This indicates the signal power level at which the signal-noise ratio, measured in voltage, is approximately 2.5 at the video amplifier's output. This yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{M-p_{i n}}{\sqrt{4 \mathrm{KT}_{0} \mathrm{~B}}}=\mathrm{H} \text { or } P_{I N}=\frac{31,5 \cdot 10^{-i 1} \sqrt{\mathrm{~B}}}{\mathrm{M}} . \tag{1162}
\end{equation*}
$$

High-frequency circuit
With $B$ expressed in $M H z$ and $P_{I N}$ expressed in $d B m$, the tangential sensitivity becomes

$$
\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{s}}=-35-10 \log +5 \log _{\mathrm{MHz}}
$$

which is normally stated for $B=1 \mathrm{MHz}$, and is then written

$$
T_{\mathrm{s}_{1 \mathrm{MHz}}}=-\left(53+10 \log \frac{\mathrm{M}}{50}\right) \mathrm{dBm}
$$

[2] gives a somewhat different expression for the tangential sensitivity, which is used in the evaluation of point-contact and Sb diodes:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& T_{s} 10 \log \left[\frac{5 \sqrt{4 K T_{0}}}{a} \frac{\sqrt{R_{g_{j}}+K_{j}}}{R_{j}} \cdot \sqrt{\frac{R_{j}+R_{A}}{R_{j}}}\right] \\
& \because 10 \log \left(1+\frac{\omega^{2} c^{2} R_{s} n^{2}}{R_{s}+R_{j}}\right)+5 \log B \text { dRm }
\end{aligned}
$$

where $R^{\prime} A$ is the equivalent noise resistance representing both the video amplifier's internal noise and the flicker noise.

$$
\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{A}}^{\mathrm{i}} \propto \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{A}}+\frac{1,1 \cdot 10^{5}}{B} \log \frac{\mathrm{P}_{2}}{\mathrm{I}_{1}} \underset{\mathrm{~B}}{\mathrm{~B}} \text { (when the diode current }<\mu \mathrm{A} \text { and }
$$

where the video bandwidth is defined as $B=\mathrm{F}_{2}-\mathrm{E}_{1}$. It can be immediately seen that the second term in the expression for $R^{\prime} A$ representing the flicker noise with normal $R_{A}$ and $B$ values produces an almost-ignorable increase in noise. For exampler with $B=\mathrm{E}_{2}=105 \mathrm{~Hz}$ and $\mathrm{f}_{1}=10 \mathrm{~Hz}$, an equivalent flicker-noise resistance of 4.4 ohm is produced. Then, it is also apparent that the earlier standard value of $R_{A}=1200$ ohm must be reduced in order to utilize the Sb diode's low internal noise. If $R_{A}$ i.s reduced by a transformer-coupling, so that $R_{A} \simeq R^{\prime} A=$ 100, then, according to [2], nearly the same sensitivity level is obtained as when $\mathrm{R}^{\prime} \mathrm{S}=0$.

To compare the various detector diode characteristics, [3]
has set $R_{A}=0$, so that the contribution of the video amplifier is not calculated, and calculated $T_{s}$ for $B=1 \mathrm{~Hz}$. The expression for $T_{s}$ can then be simplified to

$$
\begin{aligned}
& +10 \log \\
& \left(1+\frac{\omega^{2} C_{j}^{2} R_{s} R_{j}^{2}}{R_{s}+R_{j}}\right) d B m \\
& \mathrm{aBms}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\sum_{V}=$ the video frequency.
As in the mixer diode, the normalized noise temperature from thermal and Eluctuation noise is indicated by $t_{W}$. $K_{n}$ is a flickernoise constant approximately equal to $1.8 \mathrm{Gz} / \mu \mathrm{A}$ for a Sb diode and $4000 \mathrm{~Hz} / \mathrm{HA}$ for a point-contact diode. Since $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{w}}$ is approximately equal to one, we can set

$$
t_{v}\left(1+\frac{K_{n}{ }_{d}}{I}\right) \propto t_{v}+\frac{K_{n} I}{I}=t_{a} .
$$

Td as a function of the video frequency is given in Figure 25.
To calculate TsiHz, it is appropriate to state


With low high-frequencies ( $\omega=0$ ), maximum sensitivity is reached with maximum Rj, which without bias is approximately 105 ohm. When $n=1, \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{S} 1 \mathrm{~Hz}}=-103 \mathrm{dBm}$. However, it is practically impossible to adapt both the high-frequency and the video circuits to this ligh impedance, but the obtained value can be seen as an absolute minimum value. For a more realistic, adaptable $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{j}}$ of approximately 500 ohm, which is obtained with $I_{d}=50 \mu \mathrm{~A}, \mathrm{I}_{51 \mathrm{~Hz}}$ becomes approximately -91 dBm , ignoring the flicker noise (this is applicable at sufficiently high $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{V}}$ ). In the construction of very broadbanded detectors, $\mathrm{Rj}_{\mathrm{j}}$ must be reduced down to 50 ohm. (commercial detector holders are now available with bandwidths of 10 MHz to 12.4 GHz ) for which a current $I_{\text {d }}$ of approximately 500 A is required. With $R_{S}=10$ ohm, we obtain in the same way as before TsiHz $=-86 \mathrm{dBm}$. The contribution from the flicker noise $=\log t_{d}$ as a function of the video frequency $f_{v}$, is then taken from Figure 25 in the section titled "The Mixer Diode." The tangential sensitivity of today's sb and point-
contact diodes have been calculated in this manner and are shown in Figure 33-A.


ORIGINAL PAGE IS OF POOR QUALITY

Figure 33A.


A careful calculation of the tangential sensitivity when
$\omega \neq 0$ is complicated by the fact that three terms in the previously-given expression for $T_{s}$ vary with $I_{d}$, which means that for every $w_{r}$ there is an optimum $I_{d}$ value. However, these first become significant at very low $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{v}}$ values and are ignored in the following estimate. In order to obtain the best possible sensitivity with a detector diode at high-Erequency, $C_{j}$ and $R_{S}$ must be minimized. For this reason, the point-contact diode today is superior to the Sb diode at very high $f$ (equal to $\omega / 2 \pi$ ), except at very low $f_{V}$, because of its significantly
lower $C_{j}$. This is treated in detail in [3]. As previously discussed in connection with mixer diodes; it is İkely that Sb diodes in the future will be produced with Cj as low as in a point-contact diode; in other words, approximately 0.1 pF . Using the date given in [2] and [3], a corresponding $R_{S}$ value of 5 ohm can be assumed. Significant reductions in ta as a function of $f_{V}$ and $I_{d}$ can hardly be expected in the future. Rj according to the expression given, is determined by $I_{d}$. Using these assumptions and setting $I_{d}=50 \mu A_{r} T_{s}$ has been calculated as a function of $f$. The results are shown in Figure 33-B. Detectors with this performance level will probably be produced long before 1985, but Iurther improvements cannot be expected after that, and so Figure $33-B$ shows a forecast for 1985.

The same figure shows the performance level for diodes in 1966, according to [3], and, for the most part, the data is the same in 1970. Observe the difference in the video frequency $f_{v}$ for point-contact and $S b$ diodes.

Concerning the use of point-contact diodes at extremely high frequencies, it should be noted here that they are used for the detection of up to 3000 GHz , from both incoherent heat sources [4] and from gas lasers [5]. In [5], the tangential sensitivity has been measured at $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{v}}=100 \mathrm{~Hz}$ and 1 Hz bandwidth as -36 dBm with 1000 GHz ; and -23 dBm with 3000 GHz . These results are somewhat worse than an extrapolation of the broken line in Figure $33-\mathrm{E}$ gives [3]. The detector's time constant has been estimated at less than 1 ns .

It is necessary for back diodes to exhibit low Rj ( $=100$ ohm) and high tangential sensitivity ( $\left.T_{S_{1}} \mathcal{H z}^{\sim}-89 \mathrm{dBm}\right)$ without bias, so that the addition from the ficker noise is null. However, the sensitivity worsens with increasing high frequency more rapidly than in other diodes, due to the unavoidable increasing of $C_{j}$. According to the data in [3], one can estimate a worsening of approximately 3 dB already at 10 GHz in comparison to a point-contact diode (and a future 5 b diode, ignoring the flicker noise). Several typical values for a back diode are shown in Figure 33-B. Thus, the back diode will continue to be of great interest in connection with the constriction of broadband detectors up to 10 to 20 GHz in which very low video frequencies are significant. However, the dynamic range will be less than in an Sb diode, as will be shown.

## The Detector's Quadratic Range

The upper limit for a detector's quadratic range was defined in [3] as the power, $P_{k v}$ at which the detector function deviates 0.3 dB from a pure quadratic characteristic. It has been shown for the three previously discussed diodes that with low w values,
the following expression approximates $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{kv}}$ :

$$
P_{k v}=\frac{9 h_{0}}{B_{0}^{2} R_{V}}\left(1+\frac{R_{g}}{R_{v}}\right) \operatorname{sanh} .
$$

With Ry $=100$ ohm, a point-contact diode yields approximately -30 dBm , an Sb diode -24 dBm , and a back diode -28 dBn . The corresponding values for the dynamic range calculated from TsiHz are approximately $58 \mathrm{~dB}, 64 \mathrm{~dB}$ and 61 dB , respectively. The last value (for the back diode) is probably too high, since the calculation of $P_{k v}$ produced an altogether-too-high power level. According to [3], measured Pky values lie at -36 dBm . By choosing the average of the special measured value and the calculated value, $P_{k y}=-32 \mathrm{dBm}$, the dynamic range of the back diode becomes approximately 37 dB . Thus, these approximate figures show that the Sb diode has the largest dynamic range (with low 0 and high $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{V}}$ ). However, with $\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{V}}$ values under 100 Hz , the back diode is best in this respect. Major improvements of the dynamic range can hardly be expected for any diodes.

Concerning the resistance of detector diode to overloading, the discussion in the section titled "The Mixer Diode" is applicable to a certain degree. However, under normal conditions a detector diode is destroyed by pulses of several $s$ in length, not by short spike-leakage. Therefore, it is completely natural to specify their power durability by a maximum peak-power level. For example, if the diode is adapted to a low power level, a point-contact diode with a range of 10 to 40 GHz will withstand approximately 100 mW of both peak and CW power. A X-band SB diode will withstand 200 mW CW power and close to 1 W peak power.

Less Common Types of Detectors
In addition to the three previously discussed detector diodes, there are several less common types which can be very significant in the future. To this belong the Josephson detector and two others given in [3], whose function has so far been only scantly researched. They are called the thermoelectric detector (TED) and the space-charge-limited dielectric diode (SCLD).

## The Josephson Detector

The Josephson junction, which was described in the chapter on generation and frequency conversion, can also be used as a broadband video detector up to very high frequencies. [6] shows how an alteration of the zero-voltage current by the effects of high-frequency radiation can be utilized toward this goal. Figure 34 illustrates schematically the way in which the $I-V$ curve is changed by the effect of high-frequency radiation, and how the detector voltage varies with a pulsed signal. Such a detector can be very broadbanded. For example, niobium point-contact junctions have been used from 75 to 850 GHz . The maximum sensitivity of this material is around 150 GHz . A measurement of the detector's sensitivity at 75 GHz produced, with 1 GHz amplifier bandwidth a value of approximately $5 \cdot 10^{-13} \mathrm{~W}$ ("noise equivalent power"). Converted to tangential sensitivity, still with $1{ }^{-H z}$ bandwidth, this becomes $T_{s}=-89$ dBm. It should be observed that this high sensitivity is obtained without any special adaption of the signal to the detector, and at a frequency at which the niobium detector does not have maximum sensitivity. (Compare to figure 33B.) The measurements have also shown that the Josephson detector has a very low time constant, in each case less that 10 ns . According to [7], the detector's sensitivity can be increased an additional 20 dB by strongly coupling it to a resonator with a high $Q$-value, and by choosing the forward bias $V_{B}$ so that the Josephson junction oscillates at the cavity's resonance frequency, $f_{o}$ or, in other words, so that $V_{B}=h f_{g} / 2 e$. At the "resonance" voltage, a current-increasing step in the I-V curve is achieved and the height of the step varies with the high-frequency power.

With an appropriate direct current through the junction, then,/169 a varying high-Erequency power can be transformed into a corresponding detector voltage, in agreement with figure 34. The increased sensitivity can then be explained by the $I-V$ curve's ( $\mathrm{dV} / \mathrm{dI}$ ) being much larger than the zero-voltage step in figure 34. Of course, such a detector will be narrow-banded, but should be easily mechanically tuned.

The very good results already obtained with the Josephson detector indicate that it can be of great significance in millimeter and sub-millimeter wave techniques in the future in situations where the need for cooling with liquid helium does not get in the
way. The broadband type of detector will possibly produce tangential ( $T_{s}$ ) values which lie 25 to 30 dB below the lowest curve in figure 33B: Resonance detectors can be expected to be 10 to 15 dB better. These values apply without regard to the flicker noise, of ${ }^{-}$which very little is known.


Figure 34.

## The Thermoelectric Detector

The TED consists of a very fine metal point which produces /170 a pure ohmic contact with the center of the semiconductor's plane side in the form of a hemisphere. The high electric field strength impinging on the point-contact produces in the closest electrons a high energy which causes them to wander in the semiconductor, so that the contact receives a positive voltage. The TED functions as a very high, pure resistance on both the high-frequency and the video side. The output voltage is directly proportionate to the input power up to -5 dBm . The upper cutoff frequency is determined by the relaxation time of the excited electrons and is estimated as over 1000 GHz for silicon. There is no flicker noise. For a TED with a relatively low video resistance of 100 ohm, $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{s} j \mathrm{~Hz}}$ is calculated as -59 d 3 m , and the dynamic range is 54 dB . The tangential sensitivity can be made comparable to normal detector diodes, but only at the cost of a greatly increased video resistance (up to 100 K ), which leads to extremely small bandwilth in both the highfrequency and the video circuits. It is assumed that the TED's durability for high power levels is greater than in a point-contact diode.

In addition to the point-contact and the Sb diode, it is possible that the TED will be of great significance in the future for detection of sub-millimeter waves, particularly in combination with the need for low flicker noise.

## The Dielectric Detector

The space-charge-limited dielectric diode, SCLD, consists of a highly resistive semiconductor between two ohmic contacts. Calculations of such a diode with 0.5 V forward bias and 500 ohm resistance has produced $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{S}_{1 \mathrm{~Hz}}}=-79 \mathrm{~dB}$ and $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{kv}}=-6 \mathrm{dBm}$; or, in other words, an unusually large dynanic range of 73 dB . The flicker noise characteristics are unknown, and it is also uncertain if the SCLD can be used at high frequencies. Experiments done so far have only covered several GHz . The future prospects for the SCLD are, therefore, very hard to evaluate.

Combinations of Pre-Amplifiers and Detectors
In the so-called straight receiver, consisting of a detector diode with a post-coupled video amplifier, the demand for a very broadbanded input of high-frequency circuit is of primary importance. The sensitivity is poor in comparison to a superheterodyne receiver, but its simple construction has the advantage of being less expensive. Jhen special requirements for a very high sensitivity are combined with the monitoring of a broad frequency range, a broadband, low-noise amplifier can be in-coupled before the detector. A high-frequency signal can them be amplified 20 dB or more, with only an insignificant increase in the signal-to-noise
ratio. Therefore, an increase in the tangential sensitivity of the same order can be expected.

Both tunnel diode amplifiers and parametric amplifiers can be used, and will produce high-frequency bandwidths up to one octave. These combinations of low-noise amplifiers and detectors will probably receive increased utilization in the future through the application of integrated circuit technology, which will make the amplifiers both smaller and less expensive.

A complete examination of the noise conditions in a pre-amplifier-detector combination is presented in [8]. Through mixing in the detector, the noise amplified within the preamplifier's bandwidth $\mathrm{B}_{1}$ will produce a power spectrum which is maximum at zero frequency and which then decreases lineally with increasing frequency, to a zero value at the frequency B1. Furthermore, within the range from zero to $0.5 \mathrm{~B}_{1}$, a constant noise addition, originating from the mixing of the amplified signal and the noise, is added. One can easily see, then, that the video amplifier will receive the whole noise spectrum if its bandwidth, $\mathrm{B}_{2}$, is greater than or equal to $\mathrm{B}_{1}$. Furthermore, one expression for the noise after the video amplifier can be derived for $0.5 \mathrm{~B}_{1}<\mathrm{B}_{2}<\mathrm{B}_{1}$, and another when $0<\mathrm{B}_{2}<0.5 \mathrm{~B}_{1}$. The tangential sensitivity for the whole receiving system can be written in the following manner if the detector is quadratic:

$$
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{B}_{2}}=\frac{\mathrm{F}_{1} \gamma \mathrm{KM} \mathrm{P}_{0} B_{1}}{2}\left(1+\sqrt{\frac{4}{Y}\left(\frac{2 B_{2}}{B_{1}}\left(1-\frac{B_{2}}{2 B_{1}}\right)+D\right]}\right)
$$

when

$$
0,5 \mathrm{~B}_{1} \leq \mathrm{B}_{2} \leq \mathrm{B}_{1}
$$

and
when

$$
\mathrm{B}_{2} \leq 0,5 \mathrm{~B}_{1}
$$

where
and

$$
\mathrm{F}_{1}=\text { the pre-amplifier's noise factor }
$$

$$
\mathrm{G}_{1}^{1}=\text { the pre-amplifier's amplification },
$$

$$
\mathrm{B}_{t}=\text { the pre-ampIifier's bandwidth, }
$$

$$
\mathrm{F}_{2}=\text { the video amplifier's noise factor }
$$

$$
\mathrm{B}_{2}=\text { the video amplifier's bandwidth }
$$

$$
\beta^{2}=\text { the detector's current sensitivity, }
$$

```
R}\mp@subsup{\mathbf{j}}{}{=}=\mathrm{ the detector's video resistance.r
t = the detector's normalized noise temperature (normally, approximately 1),
\[
\mathrm{kT} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{O}}=4 \cdot 10^{-2\rceil^{2}} \mathrm{~W} / \mathrm{Hz}
\]
\gamma = the signal-to-noise power ratio in the video ampli-
        fier's output = 6.25= 8 dB. (Is often otherwise
        given as a v-ratio, 2.5 = 4 dB.)
```

In most normal applications, $\mathrm{B}_{2} \ll \mathrm{~B}_{1}$ and the product $\mathrm{F}_{1} \mathrm{G}_{1}$ is seldom larger than one thousand. With ${ }_{\beta} \sqrt{R_{j}}=M_{k}=$ the diode's factor of merit, one can then state


Thus, the tangential sensitivity is independent of $F_{1}$ and inversely proportionate to $G$. As has already been noted, it is, therefores possible with a normal low-noise amplifier before the detector to improve the tangential sensitivity by 15 to 20 dB .

## REFERENCES

1. Torrey, Whitmer, "Crystal rectifiers," Mr" Radiation Lab /173 Series No. 15, McGraw-Hill, (1948).
2. HP Application Note 907, (May 1967).
3. Cowley, Sorensen, "Quantitative comparison of solid-state microwave detectors, IEEE Trans. MYY, p. 588-602, (December 1966).
4. Happ, V. H., et. al., "Der Kristalldetektor als EmpEanger thermischer Strahlung im Gebiet von 100-1000 $\mu$ Wellenlange," $z$. Naturforsch., p. 522, (1957).
5. Becklake, Cram, Prewer, "Sjectral response of pointcontact diode in the subuillimeter range," Electronic Letters, p. 601. (December 1968).
6. Grimes, Richards, Shapiro, "Josephson-effect far infra red detector," JAP, p. 3905, (July 1968).
7. Richards, Sterling, "Regenerative Josephson effect detector for far-infrared radiation," Applied Physics Letters, p. 394, (Junc 1968).
8. Lucas, W. J., "langential sensitivity of a detector video with t . f . preamplification," Proc. IEE, p. 1321, (August 1966).

## Electronic Switching

The Breaker Diode
General Information on the High-Frequency Breaker
Series-coupled or shunt-coupled semiconductor diodes are used for electronic breaking or switching of high-frequency energy in a transmission line. The impedance of these diodes can be altered from a very high to a very low value by using a control voltage. The damping from a series-coupled diode with a total impedance of $Z_{D}=R_{D}+j X_{D}$ in a wave-guide with the characteristic impedance $Z_{o}$ can be written as

$$
10 \log \left(\left(1+\frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{D}}}{2 Z_{0}}\right)^{2}+\left(\frac{X_{D}}{2 Z_{0}}\right)^{2}\right) \mathrm{dB}
$$

For a shunt-coupled diode with a total admittance of $Y_{D}=G_{D}+j B_{D}$ and $Y_{O}=1 / Z_{O}$, we obtain

$$
a=10 \log \left(\left(1+\frac{G_{D}}{2 Y_{0}}\right)^{2}+\left(\frac{B_{D}}{2 Y_{0}}\right)^{2}\right) d B
$$

If one wishes to further study the size of the damping changes obtained with various types of diodes, one must be familiar with their equivalent circuits and the way in which the active junction's impedance is altered with the control voltage. There are two basic types. Type I consists of $P N$ and $S b$ diodes, and type II consists of PIN diodes. Even though $P N$ and $S b$ diodes are produced in different manners, their $I-V$ and $C-V$ curves are fairly similar, and so they both can be represented by the equivalent circuit in Figure 35. The PIN diode has highly-doped $P$ and $N$ sides and between them an undoped, high-ohmic semiconductor junction (the I refers to the word"intrinsic"). Its equivalent circuit is reproduced in Figure 36.


ORIGINAL PAGE IS OF POOR GYALITY

FIGURE 35

When the bias in the diode increases from a negative value up to somewhat over $0 \mathrm{~V}, \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{j}}$ in Figure 35 is large and can be ignored, while $C_{j}$ increases fapidly near 0 V . With further increases in the forward bias, $R_{j}$ decreases rapidly and produces an effective short-circuiting of the active layer. In a breaker, the extreme /175 value of the junction impedance is utilized; or in other words,
a low capacitance or a shortmcircuit. However, the reactance variations in between can be utilized in an analog phase shifter to produce a continual alteration of the phase in the reflected signal. However, the effective value of the junction capacitance is dependent upon the signal at large amplitudes, and in this way, the phase is also amplitude-dependent.


# ORIGINAL PAGE IS OF POOR QUALITY 

FIGURE 36

Despite its similar equivalent circuit (Figure 36), the PIN diode has completely different characteristics. Because of the relatively large thickness of the $I$ junction, $C_{j}$ is very low, and furthermore, is dependent upon the forward bias at high frequencies. Near $0 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{Rj}_{\mathrm{j}}$ is large (typically several kiloohm), but decreases /176 inversely proportionate to the control current. Typically, $\mathrm{Rj}_{\mathrm{j}}$ is around 1 ohm at 10 to 100 mA forward current. As the forward bias becomes negative, $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{j}}$ will increase and can usually be ignored along with $C_{j}$. since $R_{s}$ is especially low in a PIN diode, the diode is able to produce very high impedance with low losses. The size of $\mathrm{R}_{j}$ is completely independent of the signal amplitude over the diode, but the amplitude must naturally be limited so that the diode's breakdown voltage is not exceeded.

To produce a good diode breaker, the lowest possible line damping in the front portion and the highest possible insulation in the back portion are sought. In principle, this requires a small $R_{S}$ value and a large change in the active junction's impedance. If the good breaker function is to be unchanged within a large frequency band, the parasitic elements $L_{p}, C_{p}$ (and $C_{j}$ ) must be small. If these are not small, or if the frequency is so bigh that the attendant reactances become large, good breaking can still be maintained within a narrow band by switching the diode between series and parallel resonances. With negative bias and the appropisate frequency, $\mathcal{C}_{j}$, $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{p}}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{s}}$ will build a seriesresonance circuit (according to Figures 35 and 36). With forward bias, when the active junction is short-circuited, $L_{p}, C_{p}$ and $R_{s}$ can create a parallel-resonance circuit at the same irequency. The result is then a resistive change from approximately $R_{S}$ and up to (wLu) ${ }^{2} / R_{s}$. The damping changes can then be easily calculated with the previously-given expression for $\alpha$.

The determination of which type of diode to use in a breaker
will be based first of all on the desired performance in terins of power durability and switching speed. The PIN diode is the most appropriate for high power levels (over 1 W), since it has a high breakdown voltage and a large cross-sectional surface which can absorb high currents. Increased power durability requires increased I-junction thickness, and this increases the diode's switching time. By overdriving the control voltage so that the charging and discharging currents are large, the switching time can be reduced very significantly. As an example of this, it is mentioned that diodes with the breakdown voltages 1000 V and 100 V typically have a switching time from low to high impedance of 6 as and 8 ns , respectively. These figures are in approximate agreement with the general rule stating that the product of the maximum power ( $\sim V_{B}{ }^{2}$ ) and the switching speed (~inverted switching time) is approximately constant. Particularly thin PIN diodes have produced high-frequency pulses with rise and fall times less than 1 ns . These short switching times are normally only obtained with point-contact, Sb and, possibly, varactor diodes.

It should be observed that special filtration problems occur in comection with extreme short-pulse modulation. If the upper portion of the control pulse's spectrum corresponds to the highFrequency band, an undesirable leakage occurs between the signal and the video circuits which cannot be halted by any filter construction. Sufficient uncoupling between the two circuits must then be obtained with some form of balanced bridge connection.

To summarize, it can be said that PN and Sb diodes are used today for signal powers under $1 \mathbb{N}$, and can easily produce switching times shorter than 1 ns . PIN diodes are normally used for very high powers (up to 1 MW in peak power) and with longer switching times, but they can be designed as desired to produce about the same function as PN and Sb diodes.

Because of its very good performance and its large dimensional flexibility, PIN diodes during recent years have become even more predominant in all types of high-freguency breakers. Since nearly all electric control is now done by digital methods, there is no longer any great interest in analog phase shifters. Its only application is when the use of another type of diode, the varactor, is necessary. The coupling characteristics of socalled amorphous, glass-like semiconductors have been studied from several different directions in the past few years. However, it does not seem to be able to compete with the PIN diode's characteristics, except in terms of price, and especially not at high frequencies. Therefore, only the PIN diode will be treated in detail in the following sections.

High-Freguency Breakers with PIN Diodes
General Characteristics

The charges induced in the PIN diode's I-layer with forward bias consist of holes from the p-side and electrons from the n-side. After a certain lifetime $\tau$, the holes and the electrons recombine, and this charge loss is replaced in an equilibrium state by the diode current $I_{0}$. The charge stored in the diode can then be written as

$$
Q_{d}=I_{0} \pi .
$$

If the diode current is modulated with a frequency $w$, we can then write

$$
I_{A}=I_{0}+\frac{d Q_{a}}{d t}=\frac{Q_{d}}{T}+j \omega Q_{d} .
$$

ORIGINAL PAGE IE
OF POOR QUALITY
This yields

$$
Q_{a}(\omega)=\frac{I_{d^{8}}}{1+\text { j } \omega r^{*}} .
$$

The absolute value of $Q_{d}(\omega)$ is almost independent of $\omega$ up to the value $\omega_{0}=1 / \tau$. In other words, the modulation of the current has as much influence as a corresponding alteration of the direct current. At very high $\omega$-values, $20 \log Q_{d}(\omega)$ will decrease by approximately 6 dB per octave.

Thus, at frequencies under $f_{0}=1 / 2 \pi \tau$, the PIN diode operates as a normal pn diode rectifier, but at several octaves above this frequency, it appears as a linear resistance the size of which is determined by the direct current through the diode. Based on the construction of the diode, $\tau$ can vary between $0.03 \mu s$ and $3 \mu s$, and therefore, $f_{0}$ can vary from approximately 50 kHz to 5 MHz . The desirable t-value depends on what switching speed is needed and the ratio of the high-frequency current to the control current. A small t produces a small stored charge $Q_{d}$, making rapid breaking possible. In practice, a switching time of $0.1 \tau$ is usually used. However, $\mathrm{Qd}_{\mathrm{d}}$ must be larger than the charge which the high-frequency current of amplitude $I_{1}$ draws out during one half period. This requirement means that

$$
I_{0} \tau>\frac{I_{1}}{\pi I_{1}} \text { or } \frac{I_{1}}{I_{0}}<\pi \geq \tau \text {. }
$$

In the context of switching high power at low frequency,
must be increased so that the control current $I_{0}$ does not become too large. (Normally, $I_{0}$ can control high-frequency currents thousands of times higher.)

According [1], the PIN diode's $R_{j}$ in Figure 36 can be written at low frequencies as

$$
R_{j_{3 I}}=\frac{I_{0} 8 \mathrm{kT}}{e I_{0}} \times \frac{48}{I_{0}[m A)}
$$

At high frequencies ( $\gg f_{0}$ ) the resistance becomes $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{J}_{\mathrm{br}}}=\mathrm{KI}_{0}^{-x}$.
Typically, $K=13$ and $x=0.87$ with $I_{0}$ in mA. Changing the current from $1 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ to 10 mA decreases the resistance from approximately 10 K to 1 ohm. If the parasitic element is ignored, this diode, shunt-coupled to a 50 -ohm lead and using the expression For a given earlier, will produce a damping change from several hundred $d B$ to 28 dB . With a series coupling, the damping values become 0.1 dB and 40 dB .

## Power Durability

A simple analysis of the temperature rise in a PIN diode, according $\dagger$, [2], gives the following result in those cases where the length of the high-frequency pulse is comparable to the diode's thermal time constant:


ORIGINAL PAGL IS
OF POOR QUALITY
where $T_{S}=$ the temperature of the heat sink,
$P_{D}=$ the power gain in the diode,
$0_{j s}=$ the thermal resistance between the active junction
and the heat sink,
$t_{p}=$ the length of the high-frequency pulse, $t_{r}^{p}=$ the time between two high-frequency pulses,
and

$$
\tau^{2}=\text { the diode's thermal time constant. }
$$

With a long high-frequency pulse or a CW signal, the effect /i80 of the exponential term can be ignored after a period of approximately $3 \tau$, and then we obtain

$$
T_{\max }=T_{s}+P_{D} \theta_{j s}
$$

If the high-frequency pulses are much shorter than $\tau$, the temperature rise will be somewhat higher than the above formula indicates. This case is treated completely [3].

Since the impedance in a breaker diode is always much larger or much smaller than the transmission line's characteristic imjedance, it is clear that the gain $P_{D}$ is only a very small part of the total signal power in the lead $P_{S}$. In general, the con-
tribution of the control current to $\mathbb{P}_{D}$ can be completely ignored.
In a shunt-coupling, assuming as before $z_{0}=50$ ohm, and that the PIN diode can be represented by a resistance $\mathrm{R}_{\min }=1$ ohm or $\mathbb{R}_{\text {max }}=10 \mathrm{~K}$, we then obtain

$$
\frac{P_{D}}{P_{g}} \times \frac{4 R_{\min }}{Z_{0}}=0,08 \text { or } \frac{F_{D}}{P_{s}}=\frac{Z_{0}}{R_{\max }}=0,00 \% .
$$

For a series-coupled diode, this becomes

$$
\frac{P_{D}}{P_{s}}=\frac{R_{\text {min }}}{Z_{0}}=0,02 \text { or } \quad \frac{P_{D}}{P_{s}} \propto \frac{4 Z_{0}}{R_{\max }}=0,02 .
$$

The corresponding expressions for the maximum signal power become:
[4] gives the following typical data for high-power type PIN diodes. With reverse bias, these have $1 / \omega C_{j} \ll R_{j}$, so that in order to obtain good insulation, the effect of $\mathrm{C}_{j}$ must be compensated by an outer shunt inductance.

Table 8. Typical data for high-power PIN diodes.

| Diode <br> type | ${\underset{i n}{i_{j}}}^{p}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{S}}+\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{j}}=\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{ain}} \\ & \text { in } \mathrm{at} \\ & 10 j \end{aligned}$ | R aj | $\begin{aligned} & \text { in } \Omega \\ & -100 \mathrm{~V} \end{aligned}$ | ${ }^{0} \dot{C} \mathrm{~s} / \mathrm{W}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A | 3 | 0.5 | 10000 | ( 1 GHz ) | 2 |
| B | , | 0.8 | 8000 | ( 3 GHz ) | 10 |
| C | 0.5 | 1.7 | 3000 | ( 6 GHz ) | 20 |

When $T_{\text {max }}-T_{S}=150 \mathrm{C}$, the following maximum signal powers are obtained with CW operation in a 50 -ohm line. Maximum gain in the diode is obtained with forward current, which, therefore, determines the power limit.

Table 9. Maximum CW power for PIN dioles.

| Diode type | Frequency in cHz | Shunt diode | i kN <br> Series diode |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A | 1 | 1.9 | 7.5 |
| B | 3 | 1.6 | 6.2 |
| C | 6 | 0.6 | 2.2 |

Observe that it is normally very difficult to acquire a
perfect heat sink for a series diode. Therefore, the values in the series-diode column are unrealistic.

By increasing the foward current, $R_{j}$ can be further reduced, and therefore, $P_{\text {smax }}$ can be increased. Around 1 A , the series resistance will be approximately one-half as large as at 0.1 A. Technological improvements in the future should also cut the thermal resistance in half, at least for type $B$ and $C$ diodes. Increasing $T_{\max }$ to approximately 200 C might also be possible in the future without changing the diode's lifetime. With regard to these improvements, pIN diodes in the future will be able to break the following CW powers:

| Frequency <br> GHz | $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{S}}$ max |
| :---: | :---: |
| for a shunt diode <br> in kW |  |
| 1 | 5 |
| 3 | 8 |
| 6 | 3 |

These data are plotted in Figure 37 and an approximate curve / 182 has been drawn through them. This curve, labelled 1, gives an approximate forecast for the year 1985.

It should be observed in connection with high-power switching that the conversion from low to high ohmic conditions must be done very rapidly, even if there are no special requirements for the switching speed in general. Otherwise, the diode will be destroyed during the time it has a value of approximately $Z_{0}$, when a large part of the incident signal power is absorbed.
[3] has already been referred to for a general discussion of temperature rises in a diode during pulse operation. For an evaluation of the pulse-power durability of a special diode, in general, one can begin with the thermal resistance during pulse operation, ${ }^{\theta} p$, given by the manufacturer. ${ }^{\theta} p$ is given as a function of the pulse length. First, the average temperature $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{m}}$ of the diode junction is calculated in the same manner as CW power. Then, the maximum temperature during the pulse

$$
T_{P}=T_{m}+P_{D P^{\theta}} P
$$

where $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{DP}}$ is the average value of the diode gain during the pulse. The applicable $\theta_{\mathrm{p}}$-values for the previously-discussed high-power diodes are given in Table 10.

According to Figure 38, in a forward biased diode, we have $P_{p P}=\left(R_{0}+\bar{M}_{j}\right)\left(2 I_{y}\right)^{2}=4 R_{\min } I_{p}^{2} ;$
$P_{S P}=I_{F^{2}}^{2} 0_{0}$. where $P_{S P}=$ the available pulsed signal power.
With the aid of the formulas in Figure 38 , the maximum signal


FIGURE 37. Forecast curves for breaker diodes.
power in pulse operation can now be calculated. The use of the PIN diode as a TR-switch, as shown in Figure 39, is of special interest. In this case, the diode is very low-ohmic during the high-frequency pulse and is not subject to any power in its highimpedance condition. According to [4], a maximum temperature of $300^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ is then allowable.


The expressions

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 25+u_{P} P_{D P} \theta_{j s}+P_{D P}{ }_{p}=300 ; \\
& P_{D P}=4 R_{m i n} I_{p}^{2} \\
& P_{S P}=Z_{D_{0}} n^{2} I_{p}^{2} i
\end{aligned}
$$

where $u_{f}=$ the utilization factor and $n^{\prime}=$ the number of parallel-coupled diodes yield:

Assuming a pulse length of $10 \mu \mathrm{~S}, \mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{E}}=0.001$ and $\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{O}}=50 \mathrm{ohm}$, the maximum peak powers obtained are shown in Table 11, using type $A, B$ and C PIN diodes, with $R_{\text {min }}$ set at $0.1,0.3$ and 0.5 ohm, respectively.
Table 11. Maximum peak power for PIN diodes with 10 us-pulses.


Technological improvements can reduce $\theta_{j}$, ${ }^{0} \mathrm{p}$, and $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{min}}$, and yield the forecast values for 1985 which are also shown in Table 11. Table 12 shows the maximum signal power with a pulse of length 1 us.

| Diode type |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A (L-band) | 9 | 10 |
| - ${ }^{\text {( }}$ (S-band) | 0.8 | 2 |
| c (C-band) | 0.1 | 0.5 |

## Table 12.

Observe that the large $S_{j}$ in these high-powered diodes with reverse bias must be compensated with a shunt inductance, so that in a TR-switch they produce a very small receiving band. still, the bandwidth should generally be somewhat larger than in a conventional gas-filled TR tube. A large number of shunt diodes in parallel couplings are often used to connect very high pulse powers. The number diodes $n$ can increase the allowable peak power by a factor of $\mathrm{n}^{2}$. At the same time, bandwidth and the input damping is reduced, but the receiving losses increase. Two curves, labelled 3 and 4 in Table 37 , show the estimated maximum peak power for 1985.

The above maximum power calculations are only applicable when the diode is used as a TR-switch. If a shunt diode is used for in and out-coupling of high peak power, the diode, which with reverse bias is in a high-impedance transmission state, will be subject to high-frequency voltages. It can be estimated that the /186 high-frequency voltage's peak-to-peak value will not exceed the breakdown voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{B}}$, with which the reverse bias is assumed to be $0.5 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{B}}$. With this assumption, the corresponding maximum power becomes

$$
P=\frac{V_{B}^{2}}{8 Z_{o}}
$$

In the high-power diodes previously discussed, $V_{B}$ is on the order of 1000 V , so that $\mathrm{Z}_{0}$ at 50 ohm produces a maximum power of approximately 2.5 kW . This power is 10 to 1000 higher than the maximum powers in the case of $S M$ couplings. (A reduction of $Z_{0}$ oan naturally increase $P$ by up to ten times:)

However, [4] indicates that the high-power diodes discussed here are able to modulate hundreds of volts in the forward bias region, without producing any curient or worsening the highimpedance condition. In the same way, the high-frequency amplitude during the negative half-period can be allowed to exceed $V_{B}$ without having the diode destroyed by an uncontrollable surge. Therefore, the high-frequency amplitude can be allowed to be larger than $0.5 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{B}}$. In the best case, it is possible that a doubling of the amplitude could be allowed, which would increase the maximum power four times, up to a level of 10 kW .

It is somewhat uncertain whether the overdriving of the diode described here can be allowed. If so, the diode temperature and the average power must definitely be kept very low. In [10], both measurements and experiments show that the diode losses inciease in the high-impedance condition with increasing power gain, and that this gain increases rapidly when the high-frequency amplitude is controlled in the forward bias region of the diode. (However, a sufficiently short high-frequency pulse does not have time to increase the temperature.) As a compromise, it is therefore assumed here that overdriving will, at most, allow a doubling of the peak power level.

Naturally, the construction of diodes with thicker 1 -junctions will produce higher $V_{B}$ values. At the same time, however, heat dissiptation is worsened and the series resistance and the switching time is increased. Increasing the doping level can increase /187 the maximum value of the field strength which produces breakdown, but this has the disadvantage of increasing losses. Diodes in the future which will withstand high peak power in both the lowresistance and high-resistance condition can probably produce $V_{B}$ values up to 3 or 4 kV . This should then allow maximum peak powers of up to 20 kW , with $Z_{0}=50$ ohm. This power level has been used somewhat arbitrarily in Figure 37 to indicate an absolute limit of approximately 3 GHz . Above this, the power levels changes with frequency are drawn parallel to the other carves. The resulting curve, labeled 2 , represents the possible level of development in 1985 for a high-frequency breaker operating with pulsed high-frequency power. It is interesting to observe how insignificant the increase in signal power becomes with the transition from CW to peak power (curves 1 and 2). This can be interpreted to mean that with Zo approximately 50 ohm, the diode will be exerted equally in terms of power gain and the risk of breakdown.

Reducing $z_{o}$ decreases curve 1 and increases curve 2.


## FIGURE 39.

In general, the series coupling of several diodes can in--rease the total $V_{B}$ significantly, but such a configuration always has difficult problems with effective heat dissipation. In addition, in all applications where the average power is relatively high, a high-impedance shunt diode must be well cooled. An upper temperature limit of 150 C is assumed in [4]. As was previously discussed, leak current will otherwise be exhibited which will lead to high input damping or even to the destruction of the diode.

The best result obtained in 1968 , [5], with a TR-switch consisting of a large number of breaker diodes, have been drawn for comparison in Figure 37 (the broken curve labeled 5). The broken curve labeled 6 in the same figure indicates the maximum power level for a gas-filled TR tube [5]. Therefore, by 1985, a few (two or three) diodes in parallel can replaces the TR tube, even at the highest power levels. The extrapolations of the curves 1-4 down to 100 W and up to high frequencies are relatively uncertain. If one assumes that the junction apacitance must decrease in proportion to increased frequency (mainly due to the reduction of the area of the diode), the series resistance $R_{s}$ will increase proportionate to the frequency, and the thermal resistance will increase proportionate to $f$. (Compare with the avalanche diode oscillator [9].) Since the signal power
we have

$$
P_{s} \max \sim \frac{1}{R_{s} \theta_{j 3}}
$$

$$
\mathrm{P}_{8} \sim \mathrm{f}^{-1,5}
$$

At very high frequencies, the current displacement (Kelvin effect) will increase the exponent for $f$. In Figure 37 , it has been assumed that $P_{\text {smax }}$ is approximately proportionate to $f^{-2}$.

The earlier discussed use of n-shunt diodes in parallel couplings with $T R-b r e a k e r s$ is naturally also of great interest for regular breakers for high CW powers. In this case as well, the maximum signal power increases in proportion to $n^{2}$, and the insulation increases with $n^{2}$. Because of the increased losses, however, the input damping must also be increased. This disadvantage can be counteracted by reducing $Z_{0}$, which would otherwise still be necessary to avoid breakdown. A breaker with several diodes in a coaxial circuit usually takes the form outlined in Figure $40-\mathrm{B}$. With reverse bias, the diodes are capacitive and they create a lowpass filter with the coaxial third wire (Figure 40-B). In this manner, maximum bandwidth is obtained for a certain total diode capacitance. With forward bias, the diode's low impedance produces a very large reflection, and consequentlys large insulation. With very high /189 signal powers, several diodes are placed around the coaxial circuit Iike the spokes of a wheel.

PIN diodes for breaking very low power levels can be designed with very small $C_{j}$ values without $R_{S}$ becoming too large. If the diode is not encapsuled in the normal manner, but is directly coupled in a "chip" or "beam lead" design in a microstrip line, $C_{p}$ can almost be eliminated and $I_{b}$ will be very low. When the $C_{j}$ and $I_{p}$ values in shunt diodes have been further adapted to produce a link in a lowpass filter, very broadbanded breaker circuits are obtained. An example of this is a breaker which covers a band from 0.1 to 18 GHz with 0.5 dB input damping and 20 dB insulation (with several diodes, the values 0.8 and 80 dB , respectively, can be obtained) [6, 7]. These breakers withstand signal powers of 1 to 2 W CW and 50 to 100 W pulsed [8], and have a coupling time of 10 to 20 ns . Any major improvement of this type of breaker will hardly be possible. However, breakers for higher frequencies with bandpass characteristics wili certainly be developed. Bandwidths up to $30 \%$ should be obtained at 30 GHz , but around 100 GHz , this value will have decreased to approximately 5\%.


FIGURE 40A.


FIGURE 40B.

## Attenuators with PIN Diodes

Because of its electrically-controllable high-frequency resistance, PIN diodes also lend themselves to the construction of rapidly-variable attenuators or modulators. In these cases, the attenuator is almost always required to have a low reflection factor at all damping values. This problem is most easily solved by using a circulator in which the gate between the input and the output is loaded with a PIN diode parallel to a terminator. In this way, the input remains adapted despite the varying diode resistance which determines how large a part of the input power is reflected to the output. If a matched diode pair terminates two outputs in a 3 dB-hybrid, the input arm will also remain free of reflection at all levels of diode impedance, since the signals reflected from the diodes are added only to the fourth output arm. A particularly effective attenuator is achieved by interconnecting two 3 dB-hybrids in which each connecting circuit between them is equipped with a shunt-coupled diode, as in Figure $41-\mathrm{A}$. Both reflection and transmission attenuation is utilized in this case.


FIGURE 41A.


FIGURE 41B.

A number of shunt-coupled diodes over a transmission line with an interior distance of $0.25 \lambda$, can produce high attenuation and low reflection simultaneously if the control current to each diode is adjusted so that the outermost diode has high resistance and the others have successively less resistance (see Figure 41-B).

Attenuators for low frequencies ( 10 to 500 MHz ) usually con- /191 sist of three PIN diodes coupled in $a n$ or $T$ configuation. By appropriately varying the control current to the respective diodes, reflection can be held low with variable damping.

In evaluating the PIN diode's power durability as an attenuator, one must rely upon the worst case, in which a single diode terminates a line and must, therefore, be able to absorb all of the signal power. If the diode lies in parallel with a terminator, it will absorb at most one-half the signal power. The use of several diodes, as shown in Figure 41-B, increases the maximum allowable signal power. One of today's durable PIN diodes can dissipate up to 10 W , so that the attenuator in Figure $41-\mathrm{A}$ should withstand approximately 40 W . Based on curve 1 in Figure 37 , the future durability of PIN diodes is calculated for cases in which the diode resistance is equal to the characteristic impedance. This yields the following values.

| Frequency | Vaximum gain |
| :---: | :---: |
| in GHz | in W |
| 1 | 50 |
| 10 | 10 |
| 40 | 1 |
| 100 | 0.1 |

Therefore, it will be possible to build attenuators for hundreds of watts of cw power up to the $x$-band with a few diodes.

Concerning the attenuator's bandwidth, it can be mentioned that the design shown in Figure 41 -A covers a 1 to 4 GHz bandwidth with SVF $\leq 1.6$ [1]. At present, octave bandwidths are obtained up to $18 \mathrm{GHz}^{-}(8$ to 18 GHz$)$. The power durability for these broadband attenuators is only $W_{n}=W_{\text {, }}$ or 100 to during a 1 us pulse with d.c. $=0.001$. Maximum damping is 65 dB . The diode's parasitic elements will decrease the baddwidth as frequency increases over 20 GHz .

Phase Shifters with PIN Diodes
The use of electrically-controlled, very rapid phase shifters/192 has become very significant in the past few years in the construction of group antennae. Phase shifting is achieved in connection with very high power levels in a ferrite material, but
-
at lower frequencies, a phase shifter with PIN diodes offers several advantages, including faster switching time and reciprocity. The following discussion is limited to PIN diode phase shifters.

The most common phase shifter, in which a switching diode determines the length of the line through the signal passes, is nondisbursive. This is seen in Figure 42-A, which also shows how the phase difference, $\Delta \varphi$, will increase with the frequency at the diode's connection. Figures $42 \mathrm{~B}-\mathrm{D}$ show the principle designs of several different types of phase shifters using shunt diodes.


In the disbursive phase shifter, whose qualities are characterized in Figure $43-A$, the phase difference $\Delta \varphi$ is constant within a large frequency range. Here, the signal's time delay is the same in the two states of the phase shifter. Two designs of this phase shifter are shown in Figures 43-B and 43-C. Ille variable susceptance in Figure $43-1$ can be achieved by coupling a varactor or a PIN diode between the two different reactive states. [2, Chapter 101 shows that the phase shift resulting from the capacitance difference $\Delta C$ can be written as
$\Delta \psi=2 \operatorname{arctg} Z_{0} O_{O} \Delta C\left[1-\left(\frac{\Delta \omega}{\omega_{0}}\right)^{2}\right]$,
where $\Delta \omega=\omega-\omega_{o}$.


FIGURE 420.


FlGURF 13N.


For example, јB = Breaker


FIGURE 43B.


A frequency change of $10 \%$ is then permitted with a phase shift of $90^{\circ}$ without changing $\Delta \varphi$ more than $0.5^{\circ}$.

The phase shifter in
Figure 43-C consists of a periodic reactive loaded transmission line, of which the figure shows one unit. By connecting each diode to the main line through a transforming line section, greater design freedom is achieved. Naturally, this is aimed maintaining constant impedance while obtaining the desired phase shift. A more complete discussion of this problem is given in [2, Chapter 101.

FIGURE 43C.

## The Phase Shifter's Power Durability

For a phase shifter with a diode of the type presented in Figure $42-B_{\text {, }}$ the maximum signal power $P_{s}$ maxi is achieved in a short-circuit condition determined by the maximum value of the high-frequency current's effective value $I_{\text {max }}$ :


With reverse bias, when the diode's impedance is assumed to be infinitely large, the maximum signal power is determined by the size of the allowable high-frequency voltage over the diode. As earlier, if one assumes that the high-frequency voltage's maximum top-to-top value will equal the breakdown voltage $V_{B}$, we obtain

$$
p_{s} \max _{2}=\frac{v_{B}^{2}}{32 z_{0} \sin ^{2} 0,59}
$$

$I_{m a x}$ is determined by the power gain in the diode and is dependent upon both the diode's series resistance and the character of the signal power (pulsed or CW). If a maximally-loaded diode is desired with both forward and reverse bias, the following is chosen:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P_{E \max } \frac{I_{\text {Ex }} V_{B}}{8 V^{2} \sin 0_{3} 5 p^{\prime}}
\end{aligned}
$$

In earlier breakdown calculations of the power durability of switching diodes in lines with $Z_{o}$-values of 50 ohm, it was accepted that the maximum signal power for $S W$ signals was determined by $P_{s}$ max. ${ }^{\text {. }}$ The forecast curve obtained in this manner, labeled 1 in Figure 37, can also be applied to a diode in a phase shifter.

In the same way, an expression for maximum peak power for breaker diodes with high peak power and low average power can be obtained which agrees closely with $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{max}_{2}$. For an overdriven breaker, one can state:


This yields $P_{s \operatorname{mox}_{2}} \propto \frac{\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{b} \max }}{8 \sin ^{2} 0,5 \varphi}$.
With a normal phase shift value, a so-called bit with $\Phi=22.5^{\circ}$, we obtain $P_{s \text { max }}=3 \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{bmax}}$. In this case, therefore, the values in curve 2 in Figure 37, multiplied by a factor of 3 , can be used as a forecast for a phase shifting diode producing $\varphi=22.5^{\circ}$. Observe that when $\varphi=180^{\circ}, P_{S} \max _{2}$ decreases to $0.13 \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{b}}$ max.

A phase shifter of the type outlined in Figure 42-D, in which the diodes are included in a continuously-matched filter structure, can withstand [2, Chapter 10] the following powers:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& P_{s \max }=I_{\max _{0}^{2}}^{2} \\
& \mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{max}}^{2}=\frac{v_{B}^{2}}{6 Z_{0}^{2}}=\frac{P_{b} \text { max }}{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

This should mean that the forecast curve for CW operation will produce values approximately four times higher than curve 1 in Figure 37. However, for pulse operation with a low average power, values only one-half as large as curve 2 in the same figure are permitted. This appears to indicate that the diode will withstand four times more CW power than pulsed power, which is obviously unfeasible. The explanation is that the diode in the forward bias condition withstands the high CW power, but would not be able to convert to the high-resistive state without breakdown occurring. Decreasing $Z_{0}$ from 50 ohm to 25 ohm will then cut the maximum CW power in half and double the maximum peak power. This results in the forecast curve labeled 2 in Figure 37.

Observe that the same problem develops if one calculates a $180^{\circ}$ bit in the phase shifter discussed earlier. When $z_{0}=50 \mathrm{ohm}$, $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{s}} \max _{2}=\left(\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{b}}\right.$ max $) / 8$, i.e., the maximum peak power will be onefourth of the maximum CW power. Changing $Z_{0}$ from 50 ohm to 25 ohm produces the same durability for $C W$ and peak power, and yields a maximum power level which is half that in curve 1.

To summarize, it can be said that phase shifters, according to Figure $42-\mathrm{B}$ and $42-\mathrm{D}$, will be dimensioned for power levels lying between 0.5 and two times the values indicated by curve 1 in Figure 37. in which $Z_{0}=25$ ohm. These foreaast values are shown in Figure 44.

If $Z_{0}$ is decreased under 25 ohm, the maximum peak power level can be increased in proportion to $1 / Z_{0}$.

The phase shifter shown in Figure 43-C, in which the diodes are directly n-coupled to the transmission line, do not withstand higher peak powers than other types of phase shifters. But, if each diode is coupled to the main line through a short transmission line, and is closely followed by a short-circuit, as in Figure 42-B, the power durability can be increased significantly if each pair of diodes contributes with only a small phase difference. This type of phase shifter is treated in detail in [11]. If one assumes that each pair of diodes must produce at least a $5^{\circ}$ phase shift, so that the total number of diodes does not become unmanageably large (in this case, 72 diodes or $180^{\circ}$ phase shift), the peakpower durability will be nine times larger than with $22.5^{\circ}$ phase shift per pair of diodes, according to measurements in [11]. The large number of diodes also produces high durability for $C W$ power.

A forecast curve has been estimated for the phase shifter shown in Figure $42-B$ which lies three times higher than curve 2 in Figure 37. Further multiplication by a factor of approximately 9 then produces a maximum peak power which lies approximately 30 times higher than the values in curve 2 . This is presented as the upper Forecast curve in Figure 44.


Figure 44. Forecast curves for diode phase shifters.
Finally, some examples will be given here of data obtained to date with diode phase shifters:

High-power phase shifters in coaxial or waveguide arrangements have been built for frequenciws between 0.1 and 10 GHz , normally with $10 \%$ bandwidth. The phase shift is usually 22.5 to $180^{\circ}$ (but sometimes $360^{\circ}$ ), and the power durability is usually several dozen kilowatts with pulse lengths of 10 to $100 \mu s$ and approximately 10 to 100 W CW . The input damping lies around 3 to 5 dB and the switching time between 0.1 and $10 \mu \mathrm{~s}$. Construction is mostly of the type shown in Figure 43-C, so that the power is divided among several diodes within each phase
step (bit). One such phase shifter for the $C$-band with 72 diodes withstood up to 100 kW peak power and produced a damping of 1 to 2 dB . For further information, see [5, page 119].

There are also several constructions of integrated phase shifters, usually designed for low power levels. In this concext, diode pairs are frequently used in a branching formation (series diodes), functioning as converters to various lengths of a microstrip line. With eight diode-pairs, producing a phase shift of 22.5 to $360^{\circ}$, the damping in the $L$-band was 4 dB . A similar 4-bit phase shifter for the 5 -band (2.3 GHz ) produced a lower input damping: 2.4 dB . Texas Instruments has estimated the price for such a phase shifter, including the drive circuit, at approximately 300 kroner when manufactures in lots of 1000.

A construction in accordance with Figure 43-C for the $X$-band using a microstrip arrangement of 24 shunt diodes withstood up to 3 kW peak power with a utilization factor of 0.001 . The phase shift was 22.5 to $360^{\circ}$, the input damping was $2 \pm 0.5 \mathrm{~dB}$ and the bandwidth 0.5 GHz , [9].

## PIN Diode Limiters

If a PIN diode is to be used as a passive limiter and a very /200 low level of leakage pulses (so-called spike leakage) is required, its I-junction must be made significantly thinner than in a breaker diode. The charges induced in the I-layer the high-frequency field will rapidly create a direct current which will decrease the diode resistance. In this way, the power transmitted by the limiter will remain at a nearly constant level of several dozen milliwatts, despite increases of 40 to 50 dB or more in the applied power.

In addition, the diode capacitance must be kept low so that the input damping does not become too large nor the limiter's bandwidth too small. In comparison to a breaker diode, a limiter diode will then have significantly less volume and, consequently, will have lower power durability. This is particularly applicable to high-frequency pulses which are much shorter than the diode's thermal time constant (approximately $100 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ ). Thus, the heat dissipation can be ignored, and the diode's power durabiljty can be estimated from the equation

$$
\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{DP}}=\frac{\Delta \mathrm{TH}}{\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{p}}}
$$

where $\quad P_{D P}=$ the allowable power gain in the diode;
$\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{p}}=$ the length of the high-frequency pulse;
$\Delta T=$ the allowable temperature rise (approx. $100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ );
H = the diode's heat capacity.

H is the product of the volume, the density and the specific heat, and if the diode diameter is $D \mathrm{~cm}$ and the I -junction's thickness is $W \mathrm{~cm}$, we obtain

$$
H=1.56 \mathrm{D}^{2} \mathrm{~W} \quad \mathrm{Ws} /{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C} .
$$

The I-junction's capacita. : is obtained with $\varepsilon=12:$

$$
C_{j}=0.834 \frac{\mathrm{D}^{2}}{\mathrm{~W}} \mathrm{pF} .
$$

From this we obtain

$$
H=1.9 \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{j}} \mathrm{~W}^{2} \quad \mathrm{Ws} /{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C} .
$$

The permitted power gain can then be written

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{D P}=\frac{190 c_{j} W^{2}}{t_{p}} \tag{W}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\quad C_{j}$ is given in pF ;
$W$ is given in cm;
and

$$
t_{p} \text { is given in s. }
$$

[12] gives experimentally determined maximum values for $W$ at various frequencies. They have been determined so that the spike leakage is insignificant. These values, and the typical $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{j}}$ values for various frequencies (taken from the chapter on breaker diodes) are summarized in Table 13, in which $P_{D P}$ with $T_{p}=1 \mu s$ has also been calculated.

Table 13. Data for PIN-type limiter diodes.

| f <br> GHz | $\mathrm{W}_{\text {max }}$ <br> cm | $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{j}}$ <br> pF | $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{DP}}$ at$\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{p}}=1 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ <br> W | $R_{\text {min }}$ <br> $\Omega$ | $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{SP}}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.1 | $2.7 \cdot 10^{-3}$ | 30 | 41.500 | 0.05 | 10 MW |
| 1 | $1.0 \cdot 10^{-3}$ | 3 | 570 | 0.5 | 14 kW |
| 3 | $0.5 \cdot 10^{-3}$ | 1 | 48 | 1.5 | 0.4 kW |
| 10 | $0.2 \cdot 10^{-3}$ | 0.3 | 2 | 5.0 | 5 W |
| 30 | $0.1 \cdot 10^{-3}$ | 0.1 | 0.2 | 15.0 | 0.2 W |

The maximum signal power in the line can be written in the same manner as for breaker diodes:

$$
P_{S P}=\frac{n^{2} z_{0}}{P_{D P} \frac{4 R_{\min }}{}}
$$

According to [12], 0.7 ohm is a typical value for $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{min}}$ at 0.3 GHz . Since $R_{\text {min }} \sim W / D^{2}, R_{\text {min }} \sim 1 / C_{j}$. With the assumption that $R_{\text {min }}$ can be decreased in diodes in the future, it is assumed that $R_{\min }$ will equal 0.5 ohm at 1 GHz . $R_{\text {min }}$ and $P_{S P}$ have been calculated from this and are included in the table, with $n=1$ and $z_{0}=50$ ohm. (It should be observed that if a 30 pF -diode at 0.1 GHz is replaced by 30 one-pF-diodes, the same $\mathrm{P}_{S P}$ is obtained.)

The maximum signal power in pulse operation shown in Table 13/202 has been presented as forecast curve 1 in Figure 45. However,
the values from 10 GHz have been increased significantly, since these thin diodes are able to dissipate heat during the pulse. The PIN diode limiter can apparently handle very high powers up to the S -band, but above the x -band its power durability becomes poor, even if several diodes are used. At high frequencies, it is therefore necessary to increase the thickness of the I-junction and ${ }^{2}$ as a result, the power durability. The leakage pulse which then occurs must be handled by a supplementary rapid limiter with lower power durability, e.g. a varactor diode. The maximum peak power which can be limited will then be less than for a controlled breaker diode of maximum size, represented by curve 4 in Figure 37. It can be estimated that PIN-varactor combinations will in the future be able to be represented by a power-frequency curve which lies somewhere between curve 4 in Figure 37 and the values cal.culated above for a single PIN diode limiter. The highest power. values obtained in 1968 in pulse operation with $T p=1$ нs for a limiter with a diode in a waveguide will help in understanding the position of the forecast curve. The 1968 values, according to [13], are drawn in Figure 45 and labeled "according to [13]." Naturally, the waveguide has much higher impedance than 50 ohm, and therefore, the limiter diode can hande proportionally higher powers. A feasible forecast curve for $Z_{0}=50$ ohm, number 2 in Figure 45, can be assumed to closely coincide with the values in [13].

Curve 2 can also be assumed to represent the so-called halfactive PIN diode limiter, in which a loose-coupled detector diode before the PIN diode detects the high-frequency pulse and emits a control signal to the PIN diode. (In this case, a following stage with a varactor diode is also required.)

The durability of a PIN limiter for CW signals is estimated in principle in the same way as for a breaker. Using earlier defined notation, we obtain for a shunt diode

$$
P_{S \max }=\frac{Z_{o}}{4 R_{\min }} \frac{T_{\max }-T_{s}}{\theta_{j s}}
$$

In contrast to the estimation of $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{S}}$ max which was done for the breaker diodes, there are no known data upon which to base a calculation for the limiter diode. An approximation can still be obtained if one assumes as earlier that $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{in}_{\mathrm{n}}$ in the limiter diode will be twice as large as in the breaker diode. If one further assumes [12] that $0_{j}$ is twice as large in a limiter as in a breaker, the forecast curve for a limiter's power durability should be obtained by dividing the values in curve 1, Figure 37 by at least a factor of 4. Because of the great uncertainty of this estimate, the CW power durability for the limiter diode is indicated in Figure 45 by the lined region, 3 , in which the mentioned calculation factor varjes between 50 and 5. In order
$P_{\text {max }}$ in $W$


Figure 45. Forecast curves for PIN diode limiters.
for the maximum $C W$ powers not to be as large as the calculated maximum peak power (which, of course, is impossible), the reduction factor must be increased to 50 at frequencies over 4 GHz .

Curve 4 in Figure 45, which indicated the maximum CW power for a relatively thick PIN diode followed by a varactor diode, has been derived from Figure 37 using about the same method described for the construction of curve 2. The curve has very simply been laid in between curve 1 in Figure 37 and curve 3 in Figure 45.

For a very short description of results obtained to date with the utilizaiion of several diodes in coaxial structures, one can say, based on [13], that curve 1 in Figure 45 represents the current situation very well. The maximum power at 10 GHz is somewhat higher (approximately 100 W ) and at 0.1 GHz is somewhat lower than in this curve. The state of the art concerning waveguide limiters has already been discussed and is drawn in Figure 45 according to [13]. One particularly interesting result is mentioned in [14], in which a limiter which withstood 8 kW at 9 GFz consisted of a relatively large, homogenous cylinder of pure silicon. (However, the spike leakage was fairly large.) Naturally, the silicon body was contacted on both sides, but an intrinsic PIN diode was not created. Limiters of this type, along with PIN diodes, should be of great significance in applications at frequencies over 10 GHz . This is due, among other things, to the difficulties in producing a thin, abrupt I-junction.


Figure 46.
It should be mentioned here that it has become very common /205 to combine a normal gas-filled TR-tube with a post-coupled rapid limiter diode. In this case, the TR-tube handles all the peak power and the diode eliminates the leakage pulse. The power durability is then determined by the TR-tube and coincides, therefore,
with curve 6 in Figure 37.
The bandwidth for a high-power limiter is normally approximately 108, and in a low-power limiter ranges from 108 up to an octave. As previously mentioned, the use of several diodes in parallel leads to higher power durability but also to decreased bandwidth. At those power levels shown in the forecast curves in Figure 45, the bandwidth will not be much greater than 108 . The limiter's recovery time after the end of the high-frequency pulse varies with the thickness of the diode from several hundredths to several tenths ns.

When a passive limiter is used to protect a receiver in a radar station, as shown in Figure 46, the transmitting power in principle will exceed the limiter's power durability by a value corresponding to the insulation of the insulator, i.e. around 20 dB . However, in practice, the antenna's SVF is seldom less than two, so that the power reflected to the limiter will only be 10 dB lower than the transmitting power.

1. HP application note 922, "Applications of PIN diodes."
2. Watson, H.A., Microwave semiconductor devices and their circuit applications, McGraw-Hill. Chapter 9, (1969).
3. Mortenson, K. E., "Analysis of the temperature rise in PIN diodes caused by microwave pulse dissipation," Trans, IEEE, ED, p. 305, (March 1966).
4. Unitrode application note Mi-70-1, "General information on using Unitrode PIN diodes in RF applications."
5. Ryder, Brown, Forest, "Microwave 'iode control devices part 2, Duplexers, switchers and phase :hifters," Microwave Journal, p. 115, (march 1968).
6. General Microwave data sheet, (1970).
7. HP data sheet 5082-3040.
8. "Semiconductor devices survey, Diode switches," Microwaves, p. 76, (April 1967).
9. Ward, C. S., "A 3-kW microstrip and waveguide diode phase shifter at X-band," G-MTP 1970 International Microwave Symposium. p. 351, (May 1970).
10. Rose, Haine, "On the conductance of PIN junctions at high microwave fields," European Micro we Conference, p. 540 (September 1969).
11. White, J. F., "High power PIN dior: controlled, microwave transmission phase shifters," Tran. IEEE, MTT, p. 23F (March 1965).
12. Brown, N. J., "Design concepts for high-power PIN dio limiting," Trans. IEEE, MTT, p. 732, (December 1967).
13. Ryder, Brown, Forest, "Microwave diode control devices, Part 1." Microwave Journal, p. 57, (February 1968).
14. Mortensou, white, "X-band room-temperature bulk-effect, highpower limiter," ISSCC Digest, (1967).

Since the above title encompasses a particularly large area /207 of electronics, this can in no way be a complete treatment of the adherent function principles and solid-state components. Rather, a number of examples will be given which illustrate newer methods of signal manuipulation within the microwave range.

Generally, the greatest interest in signal manipulation today is oriented toward data processing techniques. In this caser the signals are binary numbers and counting pulses which are handled by very complicated circuits, consisting of a very large number of electronic switching devices. These switches can change very rapidly between on and off states and normally consist of bipolar or FET transistors, although tunnel diodes and rapid breaker diodes can also be used. These semiconductors produce a large number of different gates which comprise the building blocks of the digital circuit. They can also be combined into flip-flops and reply circuits for a static or dynamic type of memory function. Data processing today is seldom done faster than permitted by the highest incoming switching frequency on the order of 100 MHz . The adherent data signals can, therefore, not be included in the microwave range, but data processing is mentioned here because it is in the midst of a rapid development toward higher processing speeds. It is very likely that the earlier-discussed MOSFET type of transistor, which produces oscillatiors in the 40 to 60 GHz range, will increase future data processing frequencies far into the microwave range. A further developed monolithic-circuit technology will also produce such miniaturization that the signal's transit time between the various circuits can be reduced sharply. Computer memories in the future will probably consist of flip-flops of MOSFET transistors. It is possible that the utilization of the relatively newly discovered so-called magnetic bubbles will be a price-competitive alternative. According to [1], the price could be as much as ten times lower. (The price per bit in MOSFET structures is 0.03 cent.)

It should be mentioned here that very rapid breakers of the $/ 208$ same type used in data processing are now also used in connection with so-called sampling techniques for producing directly on an oscilloscope a microwave oscillation. Schottky-barrier diodes, which are also part of digital frequency meters, are normally used. These and similar diodes are also significant in the generation and measurement of extremely small pulses as, for instance, in the determination of discontinuities in a waveguide by studying how the pulse is reflected (time domain reflectometer). Step recovery, or $S R$ diodes, are particularly suitable for producing pulses which have rise and decay times of approximately 0.1 ns .

Gunn diodes with wanoering domain can be utilized in several
ways to easily generate complicated forms of pulses or series of pulses with a certain arrangement. The current through the diode is proportionate to the geometric cross-sectional surface or to the doping in that area through which the domain passes. For example, a pulse code is obtained if an evenly-doped diode has a number of more or less deep crevices or if the doping level is varied in a corresponding fashion. Controlling the domain, and therfore the current, through a number of capacitive, connected electrodes along the direction of the domain's diffusion can achieve the same result. The domain's growth time, i.e., the current pulse's rise time, is approximately 0.1 ns in GaAs. The domain's speed of motion is $107 \mathrm{~cm} / \mathrm{s}$. A $100 \mu$ wide inhomogenity will then produce a current pulse lasting 1 ns.

The use of varactors and YIG balls for electronic tuning of oscillators has already been discussed in connection with avalanche and Gunn diodes. The same tuning devices will certainly also be of great significance in the construction of electronically-tunable filters. In all these active circuits, negative impedance converters or NIC circuits will be common at increasingly high frequencies. They can be described as active four-poles using transistors as the amplifying element. An impedance connected /209 to one of the pole-pairs produces its inverted value at the other pair. For example, this is one way to obtain a miniaturized "integrated inductance." A NIC circuit and a condenser produce a positive reactance equal to $j \omega C$. NIC circuits can also produce negative resistance which can be utilized in electronically-tunable filters to increase their Q-values by a factor of approximately 10. This negative resistance can be held constant within a fairly large frequency range (at present, approximately $50 \%$ bandwidth at 1.5 GHz ). Future NIC circuits will be built as high up in frequency as transistors will allow. Still, negative-resistance diodes should in principle be able to replace transistors in these circuits. Naturally, all of the active circuits of the type described here can only be used at low signal levels.

Signal manipulation techniques in the future will probably utilize to an increasing extent acoustic waves in piezoelectric crystals, and both acoustic waves and spinning waves, i.e., magnetoelastic waves in fercomagnetic material. Previous work has been mainly aimed at the utilization of volume waves in these materials, but surface waves should become dominant in the future. Their advantage is that the signal is easily accessible at the surface of the crystal and can be conducted by some type of microstrip line. Since an elastic wave diffuses approximately $5^{5}$ times slower than an electromagnetic wave, the wavelength and consequently the dimensions of the circuit will decrease in comparison to coaxial circuits by a factor of $10^{-5}$. In this way, extreme miniaturization of the signal manipulation circuits will be possible. As discussed in the chapter on the electroacoustic amplifier, difficulties in pioducing the necessary circuits occur
at high frequencies. In that chapter, the highest possible frequencies for surface waves were given as approximately 10 GHz . Since this is the maximum frequency for the electroacoustic converter which is always needed, the same maximum value applies in general for signal manipulation with surface waves.

The following signal manipulation functions can be easily /210 achieved with pure acoustic waves:

1. Delay (with or without amplification).
2. Frequency filtration.
3. Pulse compression or expansion.
4. Coding and de-coding.
5. Spectral analysis, Fourier transformation, etc. $[2,3]$.

The use of magnetoelastic waves in yttrium-iron-granite (YIG) for signal manipulation is described in [4]. It is especially interesting that the signal delay in a YIG rod can be changed with an external magnetic field from, for example, several tenths of a microsecond to four microseconds. The input damping is on the order of 40 dB . The delay is normally frequency-dependent, but this dependency can be reduced by suitably designing the magnetic field. A non-disbursive delay which can be varied mechanically from 1 to $4 \mu s$ is easy to produce. (Within $10 \%$ bandwidth at 2 GHz , the disbursion is less than 0.1 us.)

If the magnetic field is changed while a delayed signal exists in a spin-wave condition, the signal frequency can be lowered.

Magnetoelastic waves are also very suitable for pulse compression. For example, a compression ratio of 200 has been reached at 1.5 GHz with pulses lasting 0.5 us .

The use of magnetoelastic surface waves can, in addition to the previously mentioned functions, also produce non-reciprocal wave diffusion. The amplification of these waves is possible in principle but so fat has been insignificantly researched.

REFERENCES

1. Karp, H. R. "Magentic bubbles- a technology in the making," /211 Electronios, p. 83, (September 1969).
2. White, R. M., "Surface elastic waves," Proc. IEEEr p. 1238 , (August 1970).
3. Yoder, M. M., "Challenge of the seventies: Systems exploitation of the multifunctional propoerties of praetersonics technology," 1970 Proc. Electronic Componentis Conference.
4. Smith, A. B., "Microwave magnetoelastic devices," 1970 Proc. Electronic Components Conference.

## The Integration of Circuits and Active Semiconductor Devices

Since 1960, so-called microelectronics have developed very rapidly simultaneously with semiconductor technology. The need for greatly miniaturized, dependable and inexpensive active circuits was particularly great within computer technology and, therefore, development was mainly oriented toward the adherent digital or logical devices. Since active semiconductors and other circuit devices are usually built as indivisible units, the name "integrated circuits" is used.

Around 1964 , the use of integrated circuit techmiques within the microwave range began. At these high frequencies, the signals must be transmitted in as loss-free a transmission line as possible, in which the necessary reactances can also be created for the desired resonance circuits. The transmission pattern for such distributed circuits is transferred by photo-lithographic methods to a thin metal film on the upper side of a ceramic base plate. Since the transmission thickness is increased by electrolytic coding, so that the losses are minimized, the desired pattern is uncovered through chemical etching. In this manner, a number of different transmission Iines can be produced. Figure 47 shows the crosssection of a number of such lines (the direction of transmission is at a right angle to the plane of the paper). The microstrip lines [1] in Figure 47-A is so far the most frequently used type of line. The substrate material is normally aluminum oxide or sapphire, with $\varepsilon \approx 10$. Since the wave diffusion is not of a pure TEM type, the wavelength will be approximately $40 \%$ of the free wavelength. In the coaxial-strip line in Figure 47-B [2] the substrate lacks a ground layer, but is instead encircled by a waveguide-like metal tube. The advantage with this construction is that the variations in the substrate's $\varepsilon$ or thickness only insignificantly effects the characteristic impedance, and furthermore, the transition from a normal coaxial line can easily be made with low SVF ( $\sim 1.02$ ). The effective evalue is approximately 1.6, so that dimension reduction in relation to a normal coaxial line is insignificant. The slot lines [3] in Figure $47-\mathrm{C}$ and the planar strip lines [4] in 47-D have about the same characteristics as the /213 microstrip lines, but are less dependent on variations in the substrate thickness and can more easily produce lines with high characteristic impedance. A connection to a ferrite element can easily be arranged to produce non-reciprocal couplings, ror example, insulators and phase shifters. It should be pointed out here that microstrip lines can be built up in a ferrite substrate and then can also be easily manipulated to produce these circuit functions.

The dielectric strip line in Figure 47-E, which cannot be produced in the same way as the other types of lines in Figure 47 , has been suggested to be especially appropriate for very high
frequencies (millimeter waves) [5].
Instead of obtaining the desired reactances with open or short-circuited shunt lines of suitable length, these reactances can be created by concentrated impedance devices. The same techniques used in producing microstrip lines can be utilized to create inductances in the form of horizontal spirals and condensers, consisting of two metal films separated by a thin oxide layer. Since these impedance elements must be much smaller than a quarter-wavelength, their dimensions will be very small at frequencies near 10 GHz . This places high demands on the photoresist process and the substrate's surface smoothness. Normally, optic plane positioned sapphire is utilized in which the practical upper cutoff frequency will lie between 10 and 15 GHz .

If the substrate consists of a high-resistive semiconductor, the circuits can be manufactured in the normal way and the required active elements, both transistors and diodes, can be directly produced at the desired place through the various doping processes. These so-called monolithic circuits are now very common in transistor amplifiers for low frequencies, but within the microwave range the manufacturing problems are still not completely solved. In general, the circuit losses will be too large at up to 10 GHz . However, at higher frequencies where both the dimensions and the losses per wavelength are small, these monolithic circuits will represent an economically attractive alternative when mass produced. Integrated circuits for frequencies over 50 GHz will probably have to be made with monolithic techniques using gallium arsenide as the substrate material.

However, in the laige majority of integrated circuits for the microwave range, the active devices are produced separately and then connected to the transmission pattern. These are then called integrated hybrid circuits.

Since most integrated circuits to date are made with microstrip lines or concentrated devices, these will now be discussed in more detail with regard to obtainable Q-values and cutoff frequencies.

According to [6], the figure of merit for a microstrip line (which has a linewidth w much larger than substrate thickness $h$ ) can be written

$$
Q=0,63 h_{\operatorname{cin}} \sqrt{\sigma} \sqrt{\hat{G}_{\mathrm{GHz}}}, \quad \begin{gathered}
\text { where } \\
(\Omega \mathrm{m}){ }_{1} \\
\sigma
\end{gathered} \text {. the metal's conductivity in }
$$

For example, for copper we obtain

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
Q=4780 \mathrm{~h} \mathrm{~cm}^{2} \sqrt{\mathrm{FHIz}} . & \text { ORIGINAI PAGE IS } \\
& \text { OF ROOR QUALITY }
\end{array}
$$

This expression applies to cor pletely smooth metal surfaces and a loss-free dielectric.

The line damping can be written

$$
\alpha=\frac{27 \cdot 3}{Q} \mathrm{aB} / \lambda \mathrm{B}
$$

with the wavelength $\lambda g \simeq \frac{30}{\mathrm{~F}_{\text {chz }} \mathrm{ra}}$ cm .
Still with w >> h, the characteristic impedance

$$
z_{0} \propto \frac{377}{\sqrt{E}} \frac{h}{y^{*}}
$$

With the normal substrate values $h=0.64 \mathrm{~mm}$ and $\varepsilon=9.6$, at 10 GHz we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& Q=960 ; \\
& a=0.028 \mathrm{~dB} / \mathrm{\lambda g}=0.029 \mathrm{~dB} / \mathrm{cm} .
\end{aligned}
$$

For comparison it can be mentioned that the highest measured Q-value in a microstrip line with $z_{0}-23$ ohm in the $x$-band is 738. The practically obtainable Q-value is approximately $20 \%$ lower than the theoretical maximum. This corresponds to an increase in the a-value of $0.009 \mathrm{~dB} / \mathrm{\lambda g}$, which originates mainly from the dielectric losses. These losses are indicated by tgo, which normally is frequency independent, so that the iielectric damping per $\mathrm{\lambda g}$ is also independent of frequency.

According to the previously-given expression, $Q$ is proportionate to $\mathrm{h} \sqrt{\mathrm{F}}$, but to obtain high $Q$-values, this products cannot be increased without limit. There is a cutoff frequency at which point large radiation losses arise, due to the fact that a surface wave is excited. This wave diffuses in the substrate independent of the strip line scructure. According to [6], the cutoff frequency is

$$
f_{\max }=\frac{7,5}{h_{c m}{ }^{6}-1} \operatorname{liz}
$$

The maximum o-value is therefore

$$
\mathrm{G}_{\max }=\frac{35800}{\sqrt{\mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{GHz}}} \sqrt{\varepsilon-1}} .
$$

Fax as a function of $h$ and max as a function of $f$ is reproduced in Figures 48 and 49 , respectively.

x ceramic substrate plate
= line or ground layer


Since the derived Qmax-value applies when $w \gg h$, ie., for $/ 218$ lines with very low characteristic impedance, it can be of interest to estimate how $Q_{m a x}$ will decrease or a will increase with increasing impedance. The result of this calculation [6], which is based on [7], is presented in Figure 50. According to this, $\alpha$ has doubled (and $Q$ reduced by half) first at an impedance of 70 ohm $(w / h=0.45)$. This means that the Q-values obtainable with practical linewicths does not lie so far under the calculated $Q_{\text {max }}-v a l u e$.

There is one more factor which can reduce $Q$ in relation to the calculated maximum value: radiation losses caused by line discontinuities. The largest radiation losses occur in an open line. For example, with an effective $\varepsilon$-value of about 4 , a shortcircuited line will have approximately ten times lower radiation losses than an open line. [6] shows that the radiation losses from an open line will be as large as the normal resistive losses when $z_{0}=10$ ohm with $\varepsilon=9.6$, or $z_{0}=80$ ohm with $\varepsilon=4$. When the $\varepsilon$-value is much over 10 , the radiation losses caused by discontinuities can be ignored, but even a the normal value of 9.6. the calculated $Q_{\text {max }}$-value is reduced by as high a factor as 0.5. The lower cutoff curves in Figure 49 indicate the Q-values/219

Figure 49A.


Figure 49 B,


Figure 49C.
reduced by either high $z_{0}$ or high radiation. If an approximate value of $0.01 \mathrm{~dB} / \mathrm{ag}$ for dielectric losses is added to the previous losses, the curves situated lowest in Figure 49 are obtained.
$\alpha$ in $\mathrm{dB} / \lambda \mathrm{g}$


Figure 50.
By using U-form resonators, the radiation losses can be reduced so that the Q-value is increased $55 \%$ in relation to a straight open line [8].

In general, the Q-vaiue in a microstrip circuit can be increased through coupling with a YIG ball (frequency magneticallytunable), or to a dielectric resonator with high $\varepsilon$ (for example, $Q=12,000$ at 3 GHz , [9]). Superconductive circuits can also become useful in this context.

The Q-values obtained with concentrated circuit dejices are given in [10]. The condensers are at 1 pF and made of $\mathrm{SiO}_{2}$. The inductance device consists of a simple coil with a value of about 1 nH and a planar spiral of 4 nH . The Q -values are shown in Figure 51. For comparison, the $\mathrm{Q}_{\text {max }}$-values for distributed circuits are also drawn in the same figure (for $\varepsilon=9.6$ ).

Maximum Frequency for Microstrip Lines and Concentratea Impedance Devices

According to Figure 48, a substrate with a thickness of several dozen microns can be used for frequencies up to 1000 GHz . Figure 49-B indicates that a substrate with $\varepsilon=9.6$ should produce sufficiently high Q-values (> 100) at this frequency. Even with an ample safety margin, one can then assume that circuits equipped with microstrip will be useful up to 200 GHz . A substrate thickness of ten or so microns should be relatively easy to produce
through "sputtering" on a metal ground layer. The adherent line widths of 1 to $30 \mu$ should be easily produced with the necessary precision through future photoresist techniques. (Line widths /220 of $0.3 \mu$ have already been manufactured with electron-beam, electron-resist processes.) In general, line widths of approximately $10 \mu$ should be suitable for connecting future active semiconductor components in "beam-lead" arrangements.

Ii is likely that semi-insulated GaAs can also be used as a substrate in monolithic constructions up to 200 GHz . So far, such monolithic circuits have been built for up to 100 GHz [11], where the damping in a 50 ohm line is approximately $0.25 \mathrm{~dB} / \mathrm{\lambda g}$ for a 0.1 mm-thick substrate. Monolithic techniques will probably be applied at frequencies over 20 to 30 GHz , particularly in connection with the manufacturing of large series for which the price will be very low.

Concentrated circuit devices are of special significance under 10 GHz , where, in relation to distributed circuits, they lend themselves to often-desirable miniaturization. Figure 51 indicates an upper frequency range of approximately 15 GHz , at which point the Q -value begins to be unfeasibly low.


Figure 51.

The Power Durability of Microstrip Lines
Ceramic substrates with thicknesses of 0.5 to 1 mm can with- /221 stand maximum peak powers of approximately 10 kW . In the adherent OSM-type coaxial junctions, 8.5 kW will produce breakdown. These numbers show that the microstrip line will withstand significantly higher power levels than a single active semiconductor device would be likely to generate.

## Some General Views on the Future Prospects for

 Integrated CircuitsAs is evident from the above discussion, integrated circuit techniques produce extraordinary possibilites for the miniaturization of microwave circuits. The use of high-e substrates in distributed circuits is of special significance, but the very best results have been achieved with concentrated circuits. The fact that the active semiconductor devices can be used in these circuìs in their natural size contributes to miniaturization. In order to be $n$-coupled in a coaxial or a waveguide circuit, a semiconductor chip which normally has a volume of $0.1 \mathrm{~mm}^{3}$ or less must be mounted in a capsule up to one thousand times as large. Capsulation also protects the semiconductor from atmospheric influences, but in connection with integrated circuit techniques, a complete system function is contained in one sealed capsule. Also, the so-called "beam-lead" type of small semiconductor "capsules" can be used. In the future, these miniaturization techniques should make microwave circuits for low power levels at least one hundred times lower in weight and volume than today's coaxial and waveguice circuits. The subsequent cost reduction is hard to evaluate, since it will depend on the manufacturing technique, the sizf. of the series and the level of complexity in the circuit. Price reductions of up to one hundred times might very well be possible. One can also expect that these integrated circuits will have a very long lifetime and high operational dependability.

The advantages of integrated circuit techniques from the point of view of the circuit functions has been discussed several times earlier. The lowered parasitic reactances caused by the semiconductor'sin-coupling in the circuits and the use of concentrated circuit devices with low reactance-frequency derivitives /222 is particularly significant for the construction of very broadband circuits.

Based on the rapid development of integrated microwave circuits [10, 11, 12, 13] and the characteristics outlined above, one must assume that practically all military microwave equipment for low power levels will be integrated before 1985, at least within frequency ranges which are common now. The possibility exists in principle to expand the frequency range upward to at least 200 GHz .

1. Schneider, M. V., "Microstrip lines for microwave integrated circuits," Bell System Technical Journal, p. 1421, (May-June 1969).
2. Engelbrecht, West, "Microwave integrated circuits," Bell Laboratory Record, p. 328, (October-November 1966).
3. Mariani, E. A., et. al., "Slot line characteristics," Trans. IEEE, MTT, p. 1091, (December 1969).
4. Wen, C. P., "Coplanar waveguide;" Trans. IEEE, MTT, p. 1087 (December 1969).
5. Hardeman, $\mathrm{L}_{\mathrm{n}}$, "Tech. sessions highlight mm-wave trends and low-noise amplifier techniques," Microwaves, p. 64, (August 1970).
6. Vendelin, G. D., "Limitations on stripline Q," Microwave Journal, $P$. 63, (May 1970).
7. Pucel, Masse, Hartwig, "Losses in microstrip," Trans. IEEE, STT, P. 342, (June 1968) and p. 1064, (December 1968).
8. Roberts, Easter, "Microstrip resonators having reduced radiation loss," Electronic Letters, p. 191, (April 1971).
9. Day, W. R., "Dielectric resonators as microstrip-circuit elements; " Trans. IEEE, MTT, p. 1175, (December 1970).
10. Caulton, Sobol, "Microwave integrated-circuit technologya survey, " Trans. IEEE, MTT, $p .292$, (December 1970).
11. Mao, Jones, Vendelin, "Millimeter-wave integrated circuits," IEEE Journal Solid-State circuits, p. 117, (June 1968).
12. IEEE Journal Solid-State circuits, "Special issue on microwave integrated circuits, (June 1968).
13. Johnson, K. M., "Recent advances in microwave integrated-circuit solid-state source design," IEEE Journal Solid-State circuits, p. 119, (June 1970).

[^0]:    * Numbers in the margin indicate pagination in the foreign text.

